

Bruce K. Driver

# Math 110, Spring 2004 Notes

May 25, 2004 *File:110notes.tex*

Springer

Berlin Heidelberg New York

Hong Kong London

Milan Paris Tokyo

---

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Preliminaries</b> .....	1
1.1	The spectral theorem for symmetric matrices .....	1
1.2	Cylindrical and Spherical Coordinates .....	5
1.2.1	Cylindrical coordinates .....	6
1.2.2	Spherical coordinates .....	8
1.2.3	Exercises .....	10
<b>2</b>	<b>PDE Examples</b> .....	11
2.1	The Wave Equation .....	11
2.1.1	d'Alembert's solution to the 1-dimensional wave equation .....	15
2.2	Heat Equations .....	18
2.3	Other Equations .....	21
2.4	Worked Examples .....	23
<b>3</b>	<b>Linear ODE</b> .....	27
3.1	First order linear ODE .....	27
3.2	Solving for $e^{tA}$ using the Spectral Theorem .....	32
3.3	Second Order Linear ODE .....	35
3.4	ODE Exercises .....	38
<b>4</b>	<b>Linear Operators and Separation of Variables</b> .....	41
4.1	Introduction to Fourier Series .....	44
4.2	Application / Separation of variables .....	47
<b>5</b>	<b>Orthogonal Function Expansions</b> .....	53
5.1	Generalities about inner products on function spaces .....	53
5.2	Convergence of the Fourier Series .....	57
5.3	Examples .....	58
5.4	Proof of Theorem 5.8 .....	70
5.4.1	Gibb's Phenomenon .....	74

4	Contents	
	5.5 Fourier Series on Other Intervals	76
<b>6</b>	<b>Boundary value problem examples</b>	<b>81</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Boundary value generalities</b>	<b>87</b>
	7.1 Linear Algebra of the Sturm-Liouville Eigenvalue Problem	87
	7.2 General Elliptic PDE Theory	91
<b>8</b>	<b>PDE Applications and Duhamel's Principle</b>	<b>97</b>
	8.1 Interpretation of d'Alembert's solution to the 1-d wave equation	97
	8.2 Solving 1 <sup>st</sup> - order equations using 2 <sup>nd</sup> - order solutions	97
	8.2.1 The Solution to the Heat Equation on $\mathbb{R}$	99
	8.3 Duhamel's Principle	100
	8.4 Application of Duhamel's principle to 1 - $d$ wave and heat equations	106
<b>9</b>	<b>Problems In other Coordinates Systems</b>	<b>115</b>
	9.1 A Heat equation in spherical coordinates	115
	9.2 Problems with cylindrical symmetries	116
	9.3 Sturm Liouville problem in cylindrical coordinates	119
	9.4 Bessel Equation and Functions	120
	9.5 Examples	128
<b>A</b>	<b>Some Complex Variables Facts</b>	<b>133</b>
<b>B</b>	<b>Assigned Homework Problems:</b>	<b>139</b>

## Preliminaries

### 1.1 The spectral theorem for symmetric matrices

Let  $A$  be a real  $N \times N$  matrix,

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1N} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2N} \\ \vdots & & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{N1} & a_{N2} & \cdots & a_{NN} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (1.1)$$

and

$$f = \begin{bmatrix} f^1 \\ f^2 \\ \vdots \\ f^N \end{bmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^N$$

be a given vector. As usual we will let  $e_i$  denote the vector in  $\mathbb{R}^N$  with all entries being zero except for the  $i^{\text{th}}$  which is taken to be one.

We will write

$$(u, v) := u \cdot v = \sum_{i=1}^N u_i v_i = u^{\text{tr}} v \text{ and}$$
$$|u|^2 = (u, u) = \sum_{i=1}^N u_i^2 = u^{\text{tr}} u.$$

Recall that  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^N \subset \mathbb{R}^N$  is said to be an orthonormal basis if

$$(v_i, v_j) = \delta_{ij} := \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } i = j \\ 0 & \text{if } i \neq j \end{cases}. \quad (1.2)$$

The following proposition and its infinite dimensional analogue will be the basis for much of this course.

**Proposition 1.1.** *If  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^N \subset \mathbb{R}^N$  satisfies Eq. (1.2) then  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^N$  is a basis for  $\mathbb{R}^N$  and if  $u \in \mathbb{R}^N$  we have*

$$u = \sum_{i=1}^N (u, v_i) v_i. \quad (1.3)$$

**Proof.** Suppose that  $u = \sum_{i=1}^N a_i v_i$  for some  $a_i \in \mathbb{R}$ . Then

$$(u, v_j) = \left( \sum_{i=1}^N a_i v_i, v_j \right) = \sum_{i=1}^N a_i (v_i, v_j) = \sum_{i=1}^N a_i \delta_{ij} = a_j.$$

In particular if  $u = 0$  we learn that  $a_j = (u, v_j) = 0$  and we have shown that  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^N$  is a **linearly independent set**. Since  $\dim(\mathbb{R}^N) = N$ , it now follows that  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^N$  is a basis for  $\mathbb{R}^N$  and hence every  $u \in \mathbb{R}^N$  may be written in the form  $u = \sum_{i=1}^N a_i v_i$ . By what we have just proved, we must have  $a_i = (u, v_i)$ , i.e. Eq. (1.3) is valid. ■

**Definition 1.2.** *A matrix  $A$  as in Eq. (1.1) is symmetric  $A = A^{\text{tr}}$ , i.e. if  $a_{ij} = a_{ji}$  for all  $i, j$ .*

The following characterization of a symmetric matrix will be more useful for our purposes.

**Lemma 1.3.** *If  $A$  is a real  $N \times N$  matrix then, for all  $u, v \in \mathbb{R}^N$ ,*

$$(Au, v) = (u, A^{\text{tr}}v). \quad (1.4)$$

Moreover  $A$  is symmetric iff

$$(Au, v) = (u, Av) \text{ for all } u, v \in \mathbb{R}^N. \quad (1.5)$$

**Proof.** Eq. (1.4) is a consequence of the following matrix manipulations

$$(Au, v) = (Au)^{\text{tr}} v = u^{\text{tr}} A^{\text{tr}} v = (u, A^{\text{tr}}v)$$

which are based on the fact that  $(AB)^{\text{tr}} = B^{\text{tr}}A^{\text{tr}}$ . Hence if  $A$  is symmetric, then Eq. (1.5) holds. Conversely, if Eq. (1.5) holds, by taking  $u = e_i$  and  $v = e_j$  in Eq. (1.5) we learn that

$$a_{ji} = \left( \begin{bmatrix} a_{1i} \\ \vdots \\ a_{N,i} \end{bmatrix}, e_j \right) = (Ae_i, e_j) = (e_i, Ae_j) = \left( e_i, \begin{bmatrix} a_{1j} \\ \vdots \\ a_{N,j} \end{bmatrix} \right) = a_{ij}. \quad \blacksquare$$

**Corollary 1.4.** *Suppose that  $A = A^{\text{tr}}$  and  $v, w \in \mathbb{R}^N$  are eigenvectors of  $A$  with eigenvalues  $\lambda$  and  $\mu$  respectively. If  $\mu \neq \lambda$  then  $v$  and  $w$  are orthogonal, i.e.  $(v, w) = 0$ .*

**Proof.** If  $Av = \lambda v$  and  $Aw = \mu w$  with  $\lambda \neq \mu$  then

$$\lambda(v, w) = (\lambda v, w) = (Av, w) = (v, Aw) = (v, \mu w) = \mu(v, w)$$

or equivalently,  $(\lambda - \mu)(v, w) = 0$ . Since  $\lambda \neq \mu$ , we must conclude that  $(v, w) = 0$ . ■

The following important theorem from linear algebra gives us a method for guaranteeing that a matrix is diagonalizable. Again much of this course is based on an infinite dimensional generalization of this theorem.

**Theorem 1.5 (Spectral Theorem).** *If  $A$  in Eq. (1.1) is a symmetric matrix, then  $A$  has an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors,  $\{v_1, \dots, v_N\}$  and the corresponding eigenvalues,  $\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_N\}$  are all real.*

*Example 1.6.* Suppose that

$$A := \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{3}{2} \\ -\frac{3}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (1.6)$$

then

$$\begin{aligned} p(\lambda) &= \det(A - \lambda I) = \det \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} - \lambda & -\frac{3}{2} \\ -\frac{3}{2} & \frac{1}{2} - \lambda \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{2} - \lambda\right)^2 - \frac{9}{4} \end{aligned}$$

which we set equal to zero to learn

$$\left(\frac{1}{2} - \lambda\right)^2 = \frac{9}{4}$$

or equivalently,  $(\lambda - \frac{1}{2}) = \pm \frac{3}{2}$  and hence  $A$  has eigenvalues,

$$\lambda_1 = -1 \text{ and } \lambda_2 = 2.$$

Since

$$A + I := \begin{bmatrix} \frac{3}{2} & -\frac{3}{2} \\ -\frac{3}{2} & \frac{3}{2} \end{bmatrix} \cong \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

and

$$A - 2I = \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{3}{2} & -\frac{3}{2} \\ -\frac{3}{2} & -\frac{3}{2} \end{bmatrix} \cong \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

we learn that

$$v_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \longleftrightarrow \lambda_1 = -1$$

$$v_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} \longleftrightarrow \lambda_2 = 2.$$

Notice that  $(v_1, v_2) = 0$  as is guaranteed by Corollary 1.4. The normalized eigenvectors are given by  $2^{-1/2}v_1$  and  $2^{-\frac{1}{2}}v_2$ . Consequently if  $f \in \mathbb{R}^2$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} f &= \left(2^{-1/2}v_1, f\right) 2^{-1/2}v_1 + \left(2^{-1/2}v_2, f\right) 2^{-1/2}v_2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(v_1, f)v_1 + \frac{1}{2}(v_2, f)v_2. \end{aligned} \quad (1.7)$$

*Remark 1.7.* As above, it often happens that naturally we find a orthogonal but **not** orthonormal basis  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^N$  for  $\mathbb{R}^N$ , i.e.  $(v_i, v_j) = 0$  if  $i \neq j$  but  $(v_i, v_i) \neq 1$ . We can still easily expand in terms of these vectors. Indeed,  $\left\{|v_i|^{-1}v_i\right\}_{i=1}^N$  is an orthonormal basis for  $\mathbb{R}^N$  and therefore if  $f \in \mathbb{R}^N$  we have

$$f = \sum_{i=1}^N \left(f, |v_i|^{-1}v_i\right) |v_i|^{-1}v_i = \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{(f, v_i)}{|v_i|^2} v_i.$$

*Example 1.8.* Working as above, one shows the symmetric matrix,

$$A := \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 7 & -2 \\ 7 & 1 & -2 \\ -2 & -2 & 10 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (1.8)$$

has characteristic polynomial given by

$$\begin{aligned} p(\lambda) &= \det(A - \lambda I) = -(\lambda^3 - 12\lambda^2 - 36\lambda + 432) \\ &= -(\lambda - 6)(\lambda - 12)(\lambda + 6). \end{aligned}$$

Thus the eigenvalues of  $A$  are given by  $\lambda_1 = -6$ ,  $\lambda_2 = 6$  and  $\lambda_3 = 12$  and the corresponding eigenvectors are

$$v_1 := \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow -6, \quad v_2 := \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow 6, \quad v_3 := \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow 12.$$

Again notice that  $\{v_1, v_2, v_3\}$  is an orthogonal set as is guaranteed by Corollary 1.4. Relative to this basis we have the expansion

$$\begin{aligned} f &= (f, v_1) \frac{v_1}{|v_1|^2} + (f, v_2) \frac{v_2}{|v_2|^2} + (f, v_3) \frac{v_3}{|v_3|^2} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(f, v_1)v_1 + \frac{1}{3}(f, v_2)v_2 + \frac{1}{6}(f, v_3)v_3. \end{aligned}$$

For example if  $f = (1, 2, 3)^{\text{tr}}$ , then

$$f = \frac{1}{2}v_1 + 2v_2 + \frac{1}{2}v_3. \quad (1.9)$$

**Exercise 1.1.** Verify that the vectors  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^3$  are eigenvectors of  $A$  in Eq. (1.8) which have the stated eigenvalues. **Hint:** you are only asked to verify not solve from scratch.

**Exercise 1.2.** Find eigenvectors  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^3$  and corresponding eigenvalues  $\{\lambda_i\}_{i=1}^3$  for the symmetric matrix,

$$A := \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Make sure you **choose** them to be orthogonal. Also express the following vectors,

$$f = (1, 0, 2)^{\text{tr}} \quad \text{and} \quad g = (0, 1, 2)^{\text{tr}} \quad \text{and} \quad h = (-1, 1, 0)^{\text{tr}},$$

as linear combinations of the  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^3$  that you have found.

**Exercise 1.3.** Suppose that  $A$  is a  $N \times N$  symmetric matrix and  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^N$  is a basis of eigenvectors of  $A$  with corresponding eigenvalues  $\{\lambda_i\}_{i=1}^N$ . Suppose  $f \in \mathbb{R}^N$  has been decomposed as

$$f = \sum_{i=1}^N a_i v_i.$$

Show:

1.  $A^n f = \sum_{i=1}^N a_i \lambda_i^n v_i$ .
2. More generally, suppose that

$$p(\lambda) = a_0 + a_1 \lambda + a_2 \lambda^2 + \cdots + a_n \lambda^n$$

is a polynomial in  $\lambda$ , then

$$p(A) f = \sum_{i=1}^N a_i p(\lambda_i) v_i$$

and in particular  $p(A) v = p(\lambda) v$  is  $Av = \lambda v$ .

## 1.2 Cylindrical and Spherical Coordinates

Our goal in this section is to work out the Laplacian in cylindrical and spherical coordinates. We will need these results later in the course. Our method is to make use of the following two observations:



1. If  $\{u_i\}_{i=1}^3$  is **any** orthonormal basis for  $\mathbb{R}^3$  then

$$\nabla f \cdot \nabla g = \sum_{i=1}^3 (\nabla f, u_i) (\nabla g, u_i) = \sum_{i=1}^3 \partial_{u_i} f \partial_{u_i} g$$

and

2. if  $g$  has compact support in a region  $\Omega$ , then by integration by parts

$$\int_{\Omega} \Delta f g dV = - \int_{\Omega} \nabla f \cdot \nabla g dV. \quad (1.10)$$

The following theorem is a far reaching generalization of Eq. (1.10).

**Theorem 1.9 (Divergence Theorem).** *Let  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  be an open bounded region with smooth boundary,  $n : \partial\Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  be the unit outward pointing normal to  $\Omega$ . If  $Z \in C^1(\bar{\Omega}, \mathbb{R}^n)$ , then*

$$\int_{\partial\Omega} Z(x) \cdot n(x) d\sigma(x) = \int_{\Omega} \nabla \cdot Z(x) dx. \quad (1.11)$$

**Corollary 1.10 (Integration by parts).** *Let  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  be an open bounded region with smooth boundary,  $n : \partial\Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  be the unit outward pointing normal to  $\Omega$ . If  $Z \in C^1(\bar{\Omega}, \mathbb{R}^n)$  and  $f \in C^1(\bar{\Omega}, \mathbb{R})$ , then*

$$\int_{\Omega} f(x) \nabla \cdot Z(x) dx = - \int_{\Omega} \nabla f(x) \cdot Z(x) dx + \int_{\partial\Omega} f(x) Z(x) \cdot n(x) d\sigma(x). \quad (1.12)$$

Also if  $g \in C^2(\bar{\Omega}, \mathbb{R})$ , then

$$\int_{\Omega} f(x) \Delta g(x) dx = - \int_{\Omega} \nabla f(x) \cdot \nabla g(x) dx + \int_{\partial\Omega} f(x) \nabla g(x) \cdot n(x) d\sigma(x). \quad (1.13)$$

**Proof.** Eq. (1.12) follows by applying Theorem 1.9 with  $Z$  replaced by  $fZ$  making use of the fact that

$$\nabla \cdot (fZ) = \nabla f \cdot Z + f \nabla \cdot Z.$$

Eq. (1.13) follows from Eq. (1.12) by taking  $Z = \nabla g$ . ■

### 1.2.1 Cylindrical coordinates

Recall that cylindrical coordinates, see Figures 1.1, are determined by

$$(x, y, z) = \mathbf{R}(\rho, \theta, z) \equiv (\rho \cos \theta, \rho \sin \theta, z).$$

In these coordinates we have

$$dV = \rho d\rho d\theta dz.$$

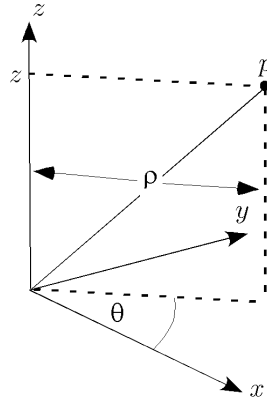


Fig. 1.1. Cylindrical and polar coordinates.

**Proposition 1.11 (Laplacian in Cylindrical Coordinates).** *The Laplacian in cylindrical coordinates is given by*

$$\Delta f = \frac{1}{\rho} \partial_\rho (\rho \partial_\rho f) + \frac{1}{\rho^2} \partial_\theta^2 f + \partial_z^2 f. \tag{1.14}$$

**Proof.** We further observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{R}_\rho(\rho, \theta, z) &= (\cos \theta, \sin \theta, 0) \\ \mathbf{R}_\theta(\rho, \theta, z) &= (-\rho \sin \theta, \rho \cos \theta, 0) \\ \mathbf{R}_z(\rho, \theta, z) &= (0, 0, 1) \end{aligned}$$

so that

$$\{\mathbf{R}_\rho(\rho, \theta, z), \rho^{-1} \mathbf{R}_\theta(\rho, \theta, z), \mathbf{R}_z(\rho, \theta, z)\}$$

is an orthonormal basis for  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} (\nabla f, \nabla g) &= (\nabla f, \mathbf{R}_\rho) (\nabla g, \mathbf{R}_\rho) + (\nabla f, \rho^{-1} \mathbf{R}_\theta) (\nabla g, \rho^{-1} \mathbf{R}_\theta) + (\nabla f, \mathbf{R}_z) (\nabla g, \mathbf{R}_z) \\ &= \frac{\partial f}{\partial \rho} \frac{\partial g}{\partial \rho} + \frac{1}{\rho^2} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \theta} \frac{\partial g}{\partial \theta} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial z} \frac{\partial g}{\partial z}. \end{aligned}$$

If  $g$  has compact support in a region  $\Omega$ , then by integration by parts,

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_{\Omega} \Delta f g dV &= - \int_{\Omega} \nabla f \cdot \nabla g dV \\
&= - \int_{\Omega} \left[ \frac{\partial f}{\partial \rho} \frac{\partial g}{\partial \rho} + \frac{1}{\rho^2} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \theta} \frac{\partial g}{\partial \theta} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial z} \frac{\partial g}{\partial z} \right] \cdot \rho d\rho d\theta dz \\
&= \int_{\Omega} \left[ \partial_{\rho} (\rho \partial_{\rho} f) + \frac{1}{\rho} \partial_{\theta}^2 f + \rho \partial_z^2 f \right] g \cdot d\rho d\theta dz \\
&= \int_{\Omega} \left[ \frac{1}{\rho} \partial_{\rho} (\rho \partial_{\rho} f) + \frac{1}{\rho^2} \partial_{\theta}^2 f + \partial_z^2 f \right] g \rho d\rho d\theta dz \\
&= \int_{\Omega} \left[ \frac{1}{\rho} \partial_{\rho} (\rho \partial_{\rho} f) + \frac{1}{\rho^2} \partial_{\theta}^2 f + \partial_z^2 f \right] g dV.
\end{aligned}$$

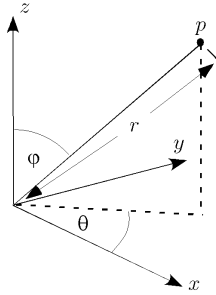
Since this formula holds for arbitrary  $g$  with small support, we conclude that

$$\Delta f = \frac{1}{\rho} \partial_{\rho} (\rho \partial_{\rho} f) + \frac{1}{\rho^2} \partial_{\theta}^2 f + \partial_z^2 f.$$

■

### 1.2.2 Spherical coordinates

We will now work out the Laplacian in spherical coordinates by a similar method. Recall that spherical coordinates, see Figures 1.2, are determined by



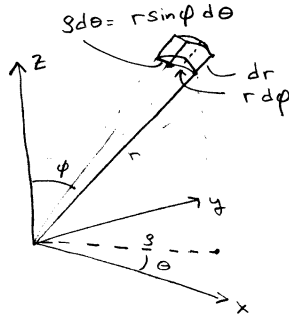
**Fig. 1.2.** Defining spherical coordinates of a point in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ .

$$(x, y, z) = \mathbf{R}(r, \theta, \varphi) \equiv (r \sin \varphi \cos \theta, r \sin \varphi \sin \theta, r \cos \varphi).$$

In this coordinate systems we have

$$dV = r^2 \sin \varphi dr d\theta d\varphi.$$

See Figure 1.3.



**Fig. 1.3.** A picture proof that  $dx dy dz = r^2 \sin \phi dr d\theta d\phi$ , where  $r^2 \sin \phi dr d\theta d\phi$  should be viewed as  $(r \sin \phi d\theta)(r d\phi) dr$ .

**Proposition 1.12 (Laplacian in spherical coordinates).** *The Laplacian in spherical coordinates is given by*

$$\Delta f = \frac{1}{r^2} \partial_r (r^2 \partial_r f) + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin \phi} \partial_\phi (\sin \phi \partial_\phi f) + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin^2 \phi} \partial_\theta^2 f. \quad (1.15)$$

A simple computation shows (as will be needed later) that

$$\frac{1}{r^2} \partial_r (r^2 \partial_r f) = \frac{1}{r} \partial_r^2 (r f). \quad (1.16)$$

**Proof.** Since

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{R}_r(r, \theta, \phi) &= (\sin \phi \cos \theta, \sin \phi \sin \theta, \cos \phi) \\ \mathbf{R}_\theta(r, \theta, \phi) &= (-r \sin \phi \sin \theta, r \sin \phi \cos \theta, 0) \\ \mathbf{R}_\phi(r, \theta, \phi) &= (r \cos \phi \cos \theta, r \cos \phi \sin \theta, -r \sin \phi) \end{aligned}$$

it is easily verified that

$$\left\{ \mathbf{R}_r(r, \theta, \phi), \frac{1}{r \sin \phi} \mathbf{R}_\theta(r, \theta, \phi), \frac{1}{r} \mathbf{R}_\phi(r, \theta, \phi) \right\}$$

is an orthonormal basis for  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} (\nabla f, \nabla g) &= (\nabla f, \mathbf{R}_r) (\nabla g, \mathbf{R}_r) + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin^2 \phi} (\nabla f, \mathbf{R}_\theta) (\nabla g, \mathbf{R}_\theta) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{r^2} (\nabla f, \mathbf{R}_\phi) (\nabla g, \mathbf{R}_\phi) \\ &= \frac{\partial f}{\partial r} \frac{\partial g}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin^2 \phi} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \theta} \frac{\partial g}{\partial \theta} + \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \phi} \frac{\partial g}{\partial \phi}. \end{aligned}$$

If  $g$  has compact support in a region  $\Omega$ , then

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_{\Omega} \Delta f g dV &= - \int_{\Omega} \nabla f \cdot \nabla g dV \\
&= - \int_{\Omega} \left[ \frac{\partial f}{\partial r} \frac{\partial g}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin^2 \varphi} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \theta} \frac{\partial g}{\partial \theta} + \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \varphi} \frac{\partial g}{\partial \varphi} \right] \cdot r^2 \sin \varphi dr d\varphi d\theta \\
&= - \int_{\Omega} \left[ r^2 \sin \varphi \frac{\partial f}{\partial r} \frac{\partial g}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{\sin \varphi} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \theta} \frac{\partial g}{\partial \theta} + \sin \varphi \frac{\partial f}{\partial \varphi} \frac{\partial g}{\partial \varphi} \right] \cdot dr d\varphi d\theta \\
&= \int_{\Omega} \left[ \partial_r (r^2 \partial_r g) \sin \varphi + \frac{1}{\sin \varphi} \partial_{\theta}^2 f + \partial_{\varphi} (\sin \varphi \cdot \partial_{\varphi} f) \right] g \cdot dr d\varphi d\theta \\
&= \int_{\Omega} \left[ \frac{1}{r^2} \partial_r (r^2 \partial_r g) + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin^2 \varphi} \partial_{\theta}^2 f + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin \varphi} \partial_{\varphi} (\sin \varphi \partial_{\varphi} f) \right] g \cdot r^2 \sin \varphi dr d\varphi d\theta \\
&= \int_{\Omega} \left[ \frac{1}{r^2} \partial_r (r^2 \partial_r g) + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin^2 \varphi} \partial_{\theta}^2 f + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin \varphi} \partial_{\varphi} (\sin \varphi \partial_{\varphi} f) \right] g \cdot dV.
\end{aligned}$$

Since this formula holds for arbitrary  $g$  we conclude that

$$\Delta f = \frac{1}{r^2} \partial_r (r^2 \partial_r f) + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin \varphi} \partial_{\varphi} (\sin \varphi \partial_{\varphi} f) + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin^2 \varphi} \partial_{\theta}^2 f.$$

■

### 1.2.3 Exercises

In the following two exercises, I am using the conventions in the Lecture notes and not the book.

**Exercise 1.4.** Compute  $\Delta f$  where  $f$  is given in cylindrical coordinates as:

$$f = \rho^3 \cos \theta + z\rho$$

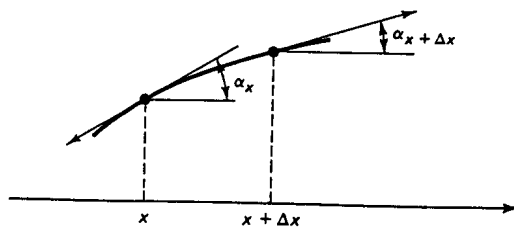
**Exercise 1.5.** Compute  $\Delta f$  where  $f$  is given in spherical coordinates as:

$$f = r^{-1} + \cos \theta \sin \varphi.$$

## PDE Examples

### 2.1 The Wave Equation

*Example 2.1 (Wave Equation for a String).* Suppose that we have a stretched string supported at  $x = 0$  and  $x = L$  and  $y = 0$ . Suppose that the string only undergoes vertical motion (pretty bad assumption). Let  $u(t, x)$  and  $T(t, x)$  denote the height and tension respectively of the string at  $(t, x)$ ,  $\delta(x)$  denote the density in equilibrium and  $T_0$  be the equilibrium string tension. Let  $J =$



**Fig. 2.1.** A piece of displaced string

$[x, x + \Delta x] \subset [0, L]$ , then

$$P_J(t) := \int_J u_t(t, x) \delta(x) dx$$

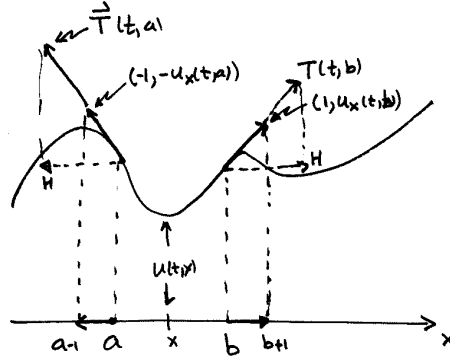
is the momentum of the piece of string above  $J$ . (Notice that  $\delta(x)dx$  is the weight of the string above  $x$ .) Newton's equations state

$$\frac{dP_J(t)}{dt} = \int_J u_{tt}(t, x) \delta(x) dx = \text{Force on String.}$$

Since the string is to only undergo vertical motion we require

$$T(t, x + \Delta x) \cos(\alpha_{x+\Delta x}) - T(t, x) \cos(\alpha_x) = 0$$

for all  $\Delta x$  and therefore that  $T(t, x) \cos(\alpha_x) =: H$  for some constant  $H$ , i.e. the horizontal component of the tension is constant. Looking at Figure 2.2, the tension on the piece of string above  $J = [a, b]$  at the right endpoint  $b$  must



**Fig. 2.2.** Computing the net vertical force due to tension on the part of the string above  $[a, b]$ .

be given by  $H(1, u_x(t, b))$  while the tension at the left endpoint,  $a$ , must be given by  $H(-1, -u_x(t, a))$ . So the net tension force on the string above  $J$  is

$$H[u_x(t, b) - u_x(t, a)] = H \int_a^b u_{xx}(t, x) dx.$$

Finally there may be a component due to gravity and air resistance, say

$$\begin{aligned} \text{gravity} &= -g \int_a^b \delta(x) dx \text{ and} \\ \text{air resistance} &= - \int_a^b k(x) u_t(t, x) dx. \end{aligned}$$

So Newton's equations become

$$\int_a^b u_{tt}(t, x) \delta(x) dx = \int_a^b [H u_{xx}(t, x) - g \delta(x) - k(x) u_t(t, x)] dx.$$

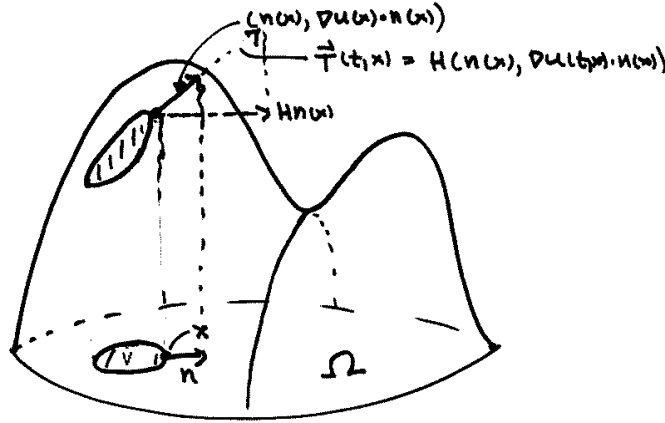
Differentiating this equation in  $b$  at  $b = x$  then shows

$$u_{tt}(t, x) \delta(x) = H u_{xx}(t, x) - g \delta(x) - k(x) u_t(t, x)$$

or equivalently that

$$u_{tt}(t, x) = \frac{H}{\delta(x)} u_{xx}(t, x) - g - \frac{k(x)}{\delta(x)} u_t(t, x). \quad (2.1)$$

*Example 2.2 (Wave equation. for a drum head).* Suppose that  $u(t, x)$  represents the height at time  $t$  of a drum head over a point  $x \in \Omega$  —  $\Omega$  being the base of the drum head, see Figure 2.3. As for the string we will make the sim-



**Fig. 2.3.** A deformed membrane attached to a “wire” base. We are also compute the tension density on a region of the membrane above a region  $V$  in the plane.

plifying assumption that the membrane only moves vertically or equivalently that the horizontal component of tension/unit-length is a constant value,  $H$ .

Let  $V \subset \Omega$  be a test region and consider the membrane which lie above  $V$  as in Figure 2.3. Then

$$P_V(t) := \int_V u_t(t, x)\delta(x)dx$$

is the momentum of the piece of string above  $V$  where  $\delta(x)dx$  is the weight of the membrane above  $x$ . Newton’s equations state

$$\frac{dP_V(t)}{dt} = \int_V u_{tt}(t, x)\delta(x)dx = \text{Force on membrane.}$$

To find the vertical force on the membrane above  $V$ , let  $x \in \partial V$ , then

$$(n(x), \nabla u(t, x) \cdot n(x)) = \frac{d}{ds}|_0(x + sn(x), u(t, x + sn(x)))$$

is a vector orthogonal to the boundary of the region above  $V$  and by assumption the tension/unit-length at  $x$  is  $H(n(x), \nabla u(t, x) \cdot n(x))$ . Thus the vertical component of the force on the membrane above  $V$  is given by

$$H \int_{\partial V} \nabla u(t, x) \cdot n(x) dl(x) = H \int_V \nabla \cdot \nabla u(t, x) dx = H \int_V \Delta u(t, x) dx.$$



Finally there may be a component due to gravity and air resistance, say

$$\begin{aligned} \text{gravity} &= - \int_V g \delta(x) dx \text{ and} \\ \text{air resistance} &= - \int_V k(x) u_t(t, x) dx. \end{aligned}$$

So Newton's equations become

$$\int_V u_{tt}(t, x) \delta(x) dx = \int_V [H \Delta u(t, x) - g \delta(x) - k(x) u_t(t, x)] dx.$$

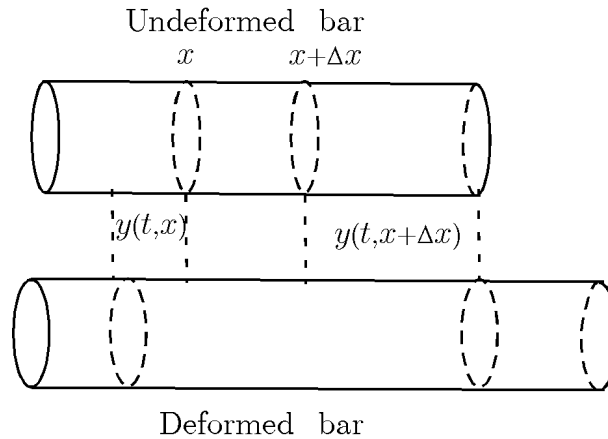
Since  $V$  is arbitrary, this implies

$$\delta(x) u_{tt}(t, x) = H \Delta u(t, x) - g \delta(x) - k(x) u_t(t, x)$$

or equivalently that

$$u_{tt}(t, x) = \frac{H}{\delta(x)} \Delta u(t, x) - g - \frac{k(x)}{\delta(x)} u_t(t, x). \quad (2.2)$$

*Example 2.3 (Wave equation for a metal bar).* Suppose that have a metal wire which we is going to be deformed and then released. We would like to find the equation that the displacement  $u(t, x)$  of the section of the bar originally at location  $x$  must solve, see Figure 2.4 below.



**Fig. 2.4.** The picture represents an elastic bar in its un-deformed state and then in a deformed state. The quantity  $y(t, x)$  represents the displacement of the section that was originally at location  $x$  in the un-deformed bar. In the above figure  $y(t, x) < 0$  which  $y(t, x + \Delta x) > 0$ .

To do this will write down Newton's equation of motion. First off, the longitudinal force **on** the left face of the section which was originally between  $x$  and  $x + \Delta x$  is approximately,

$$-AE \frac{u(t, x + \Delta x) - u(t, x)}{\Delta x},$$

where  $E$  is Young's modulus of elasticity and  $A$  is the area of the bar. (The minus represents the fact that we must pull to the left to get the current configuration in the figure.) Letting  $\Delta x \rightarrow 0$ , we find the force of the section that was originally at  $x$  is given by  $-AEu_x(t, x)$ . Now suppose that  $\Delta x$  is not necessarily small. Then we have the momentum of the region of the bar originally between  $x$  and  $x + \Delta x$  is given by

$$\int_x^{x+\Delta x} u_t(t, x) \delta(x) dx$$

where  $\delta(x)$  is the linear mass density. Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Mass} \times \text{acceleration} &= \frac{d}{dt} \int_x^{x+\Delta x} u_t(t, x) \delta(x) dx = \int_x^{x+\Delta x} u_{tt}(t, x) \delta(x) dx \\ &= \text{the net force on this section of the bar} \\ &= -AEu_x(t, x) + AEu_x(t, x + \Delta x) \end{aligned}$$

where  $-AEu_x(t, x)$  is the force on left end and  $AEu_x(t, x + \Delta x)$  is the force on the right end. Hence we have

$$\int_x^{x+\Delta x} u_{tt}(t, x) \delta(x) dx = AEu_x(t, x + \Delta x) - AEu_x(t, x)$$

which upon differentiating in  $\Delta x$  at  $\Delta x = 0$  shows

$$u_{tt}(t, x) \delta(x) = AEu_{xx}(t, x).$$

### 2.1.1 d'Alembert's solution to the 1-dimensional wave equation

Here we are going to try to find solutions to the wave equation,  $y_{tt} = a^2 y_{xx}$ . Since this equation may be written as

$$(\partial_t^2 - a^2 \partial_x^2) y = 0 \tag{2.3}$$

and

$$(\partial_t^2 - a^2 \partial_x^2) = (\partial_t - a\partial_x)(\partial_t + a\partial_x)$$

we are lead to consider the wave equation in the new variables,

$$u = x + at \text{ and } v = x - at.$$

In these variables we have

$$\begin{aligned}\partial_t &= \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} \partial_u + \frac{\partial v}{\partial t} \partial_v = a \partial_u - a \partial_v \text{ and} \\ \partial_x &= \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \partial_u + \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \partial_v = \partial_u + \partial_v\end{aligned}$$

from which it follows that

$$\partial_t - a \partial_x = -2a \partial_v \text{ and } \partial_t + a \partial_x = 2a \partial_u$$

and hence the wave equation in  $(u, v)$  – coordinates becomes,

$$0 = (\partial_t - a \partial_x)(\partial_t + a \partial_x)y = -2a \partial_v 2a \partial_u y = -4a^2 y_{uv},$$

i.e.  $y_{uv} = 0$ . Integrating this equation in  $v$  shows  $y_u = F(u)$  and then integrating in  $u$  shows

$$y = \int F(u) du + \psi(v) = \varphi(u) + \psi(v).$$

Thus we have shown if  $y$  solves the wave equation then

$$y(t, x) = \varphi(x + at) + \psi(x - at) \quad (2.4)$$

for some functions  $\varphi$  and  $\psi$ .

**Exercise 2.1.** Show that if  $y(t, x)$  has the form given in Eq. (2.4) with  $\varphi$  and  $\psi$  being twice continuously differentiable functions, then  $y$  solves the wave Eq. (2.3).

To get a unique solution to Eq. (2.3) we must introduce some initial conditions. For example, let us further assume that

$$y(0, x) = f(x) \text{ and } y_t(0, x) = 0.$$

This then implies that

$$\begin{aligned}f(x) &= \varphi(x) + \psi(x) \text{ and} \\ 0 &= a\varphi'(x) - a\psi'(x),\end{aligned}$$

The latter equation shows that  $\psi(x) = \varphi(x) + C$  and using this in the first equation implies that

$$f(x) = 2\varphi(x) + C$$

or

$$\varphi(x) = \frac{1}{2}(f(x) - C) \text{ and } \psi(x) = \frac{1}{2}(f(x) + C).$$

Thus we have found the solution to be given by

$$y(t, x) = \frac{1}{2}\{f(x + at) + f(x - at)\}.$$

In the homework you are asked to generalize this result to prove the following theorem.

**Theorem 2.4 (d'Alembert's solution).** *If  $f(x)$  is twice continuously differentiable and  $g(x)$  is continuously differentiable for  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ , then the unique solution to*

$$y_{tt} = a^2 y_{xx} \text{ with} \quad (2.5)$$

$$y(0, x) = f(x) \text{ and } y_t(0, x) = g(x) \quad (2.6)$$

is given by

$$y(t, x) = \frac{1}{2} [f(x+at) + f(x-at)] + \frac{1}{2a} \int_{x-at}^{x+at} g(s) ds. \quad (2.7)$$

*Example 2.5.* Here we wish to solve for  $x \geq 0$  and  $t \geq 0$ ,

$$\partial_t^2 y = \partial_x^2 y \text{ with } y(0, x) = f(x) \text{ and } \dot{y}(0, x) = 0 \text{ with } y(t, 0) = 0.$$

As before we know that  $y(t, x) = \varphi(x+t) + \psi(x-t)$ . We must now implement all of the boundary conditions,

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= y(0, x) = \varphi(x) + \psi(x) \\ 0 &= \dot{y}(0, x) = \varphi'(x) - \psi'(x) \text{ and} \\ 0 &= y(t, 0) = \varphi(t) + \psi(-t). \end{aligned}$$

This suggests that we define  $\psi(-t) := -\varphi(t)$  for  $t > 0$ , and also that

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi(x) &= \psi(x) + C \\ f(x) &= 2\psi(x) + C \end{aligned}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(x) &= \frac{1}{2} (f(x) - C) \\ \varphi(x) &= \frac{1}{2} (f(x) + C). \end{aligned}$$

Thus our answer is given by

$$y(t, x) = \frac{1}{2} [f(x+t) + f(x-t)]$$

where by above,

$$\frac{1}{2} (f(-x) - C) = \psi(-x) = -\varphi(x) = -\frac{1}{2} (f(x) + C)$$

and thus

$$f(-x) := -f(x).$$

Thus we have

$$y(t, x) = \frac{1}{2} [f(x+t) + f(x-t)]$$

where  $f$  is extended to all of  $\mathbb{R}$  to be an odd function.

## 2.2 Heat Equations

*Example 2.6 (Heat or Diffusion Equation in 1-dimension).* Let us consider the temperature in a rod  $\Omega$ . We will let

1.  $\delta(x)$  denote the linear density of the rod
2.  $c(x)$  denote the heat capacity of the rod per unit mass at  $x$
3.  $\kappa(x)$  be the thermal conductivity of the rod at  $x$ . By Newton's Law of cooling, the heat flow from left to right in the rod at location  $x$  should be approximately equal to

$$\frac{\kappa(x)}{\Delta} (u(x) - u(x + \Delta)). \quad (2.8)$$

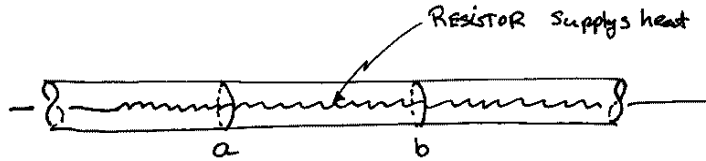
Notice the  $\Delta$  appearing in the denominator represents the fact that the thicker the insulation in your house the less heat transfer that you have. Passing to the limit in Eq. (2.8) then gives Fourier's law, namely the heat flow from left to right in the rod at location  $x$  is given by

$$-\kappa(x)u'(x). \quad (2.9)$$

(In the book, it is **typically assumed** that  $\delta(x) = \delta$ ,  $\kappa(x) = K$  and  $c(x) = \sigma$  are all constant.)

4.  $u(t, x)$  be the temperature of the rod at time  $t$  and location  $x$ .
5.  $H(t, x)$  represent heat source at  $x$  and time  $t$ . For example we may be passing a current through the wire and the resistance of the wire is both spatially and time dependent. Alternatively we may be heating the wire with an external source.

Let  $B = [a, b]$  be a sub-region of the rod, see Figure 2.5. Then



**Fig. 2.5.** Part of a rod with a test region  $B = [a, b]$  being examined.

$$E(t) = \int_a^b u(t, x) \delta(x) c(x) dx$$

represents the heat energy in  $B$  at time  $t$ . Hence

$$\dot{E}(t) = \int_a^b u_t(t, x) \delta(x) c(x) dx$$

is the rate of change of heat energy in  $B$ . This may alternatively be computed as the rate at which heat enters the system which is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{E}(t) &= \int_a^b H(t, x) dx + (\kappa(b) u_x(t, b) - \kappa(a) u_x(t, a)) \\ &= \int_a^b \left[ H(t, x) + \frac{d}{dx} (\kappa(x) u_x(t, x)) \right] dx. \end{aligned}$$

Hence we conclude that

$$\int_a^b u_t(t, x) \delta(x) c(x) dx = \int_a^b \left[ H(t, x) + \frac{d}{dx} (\kappa(x) u_x(t, x)) \right] dx$$

for all sub-intervals  $\Omega$  in the rod and therefore (again just differentiate in  $b$ ) that

$$\delta(x) c(x) u_t(t, x) = \frac{d}{dx} (\kappa(x) u_x(t, x)) + H(t, x). \quad (2.10)$$

This equation may be written as

$$u_t(t, x) = Lu(t, x) + h(t, x)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} Lf(x) &:= \frac{1}{p(x)} \frac{d}{dx} \left( \kappa(x) \frac{d}{dx} f(x) \right), \\ p(x) &= \delta(x) c(x) \text{ and } h(t, x) := \frac{H(t, x)}{p(x)}. \end{aligned}$$

If we further assume that the rod is **not** perfectly insulated along its length and the ambient temperature is not constant, we may end up with another terms in computing  $\dot{E}(t)$  of the form

$$\int_a^b Q(x) [u(t, x) - T(x)] dx$$

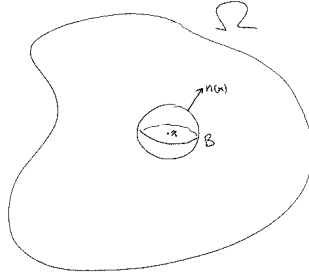
and we would then arrive at a heat equation of the form

$$u_t(t, x) = Lu(t, x) + h(t, x)$$

where

$$Lf(x) := \frac{1}{p(x)} \frac{d}{dx} \left( \kappa(x) \frac{d}{dx} f(x) \right) + \frac{1}{p(x)} q(x) f(x) \quad (2.11)$$

for some function  $q(x)$  and a modified function  $h(t, x)$ .



**Fig. 2.6.** A test volume  $B$  in  $\Omega$  centered at  $x$  with outward pointing normal,  $n$ .

*Example 2.7 (Heat or Diffusion Equation in  $d$  - dimensions).* Suppose that  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^d$  is a region of space filled with a material,  $\delta(x)$  is the density of the material at  $x \in \Omega$  and  $c(x)$  is the heat capacity. Let  $u(t, x)$  denote the temperature at time  $t \in [0, \infty)$  at the spatial point  $x \in \Omega$ . Now suppose that  $B \subset \mathbb{R}^d$  is a “little” volume in  $\mathbb{R}^d$ ,  $\partial B$  is the boundary of  $B$ , and  $E_B(t)$  is the heat energy contained in the volume  $B$  at time  $t$ . Then

$$E_B(t) = \int_B \delta(x)c(x)u(t, x)dx.$$

So on one hand,

$$\dot{E}_B(t) = \int_B \delta(x)c(x)\dot{u}(t, x)dx \quad (2.12)$$

while on the other hand,

$$\dot{E}_B(t) = \int_{\partial B} (\kappa(x)\nabla u(t, x) \cdot n(x)) d\sigma(x), \quad (2.13)$$

where  $\kappa(x)$  is a  $d \times d$ -positive definite matrix representing the conduction properties of the material,  $n(x)$  is the outward pointing normal to  $B$  at  $x \in \partial B$ , and  $d\sigma$  denotes surface measure on  $\partial B$ .

In order to see that we have the sign correct in (2.13), suppose that  $x \in \partial B$  and  $\nabla u(x) \cdot n(x) > 0$ , then the temperature for points near  $x$  outside of  $B$  are hotter than those points near  $x$  inside of  $B$  and hence contribute to a increase in the heat energy inside of  $B$ . (If we get the wrong sign, then the resulting equation will have the property that heat flows from cold to hot!)

Comparing Eqs. (2.12) to (2.13) after an application of the divergence theorem shows that

$$\int_B \delta(x)c(x)\dot{u}(t, x)dx = \int_B \nabla \cdot (\kappa(\cdot)\nabla u(t, \cdot))(x) dx. \quad (2.14)$$

Since this holds for all volumes  $B \subset \Omega$ , we conclude that the temperature functions should satisfy the following partial differential equation.

$$\delta(x)c(x)\dot{u}(t, x) = \nabla \cdot (\kappa(\cdot)\nabla u(t, \cdot))(x). \quad (2.15)$$

or equivalently that

$$\dot{u}(t, x) = \frac{1}{\delta(x)c(x)} \nabla \cdot (\kappa(x)\nabla u(t, x)). \quad (2.16)$$

Setting  $g^{ij}(x) := \kappa_{ij}(x)/(\delta(x)c(x))$  and

$$z^j(x) := \sum_{i=1}^d \partial(\kappa_{ij}(x)/(\delta(x)c(x)))/\partial x^i$$

the above equation may be written as:

$$\dot{u}(t, x) = Lu(t, x), \quad (2.17)$$

where

$$(Lf)(x) = \sum_{i,j} g^{ij}(x) \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^i \partial x^j} f(x) + \sum_j z^j(x) \frac{\partial}{\partial x^j} f(x). \quad (2.18)$$

The operator  $L$  is a prototypical example of a second order “elliptic” differential operator.

*Example 2.8 (Laplace and Poisson Equations).* Laplace’s Equation is of the form  $Lu = 0$  and solutions may represent the steady state temperature distribution for the heat equation. Equations like  $\Delta u = -\rho$  appear in electrostatics for example, where  $u$  is the electric potential and  $\rho$  is the charge distribution.

## 2.3 Other Equations

*Example 2.9 (Shrodinger Equation and Quantum Mechanics).*

$$i \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \psi(t, x) = -\frac{\Delta}{2} \psi(t, x) + V(x)\psi(t, x) \text{ with } \|\psi(\cdot, 0)\|_2 = 1.$$

Interpretation,

$$\int_A |\psi(t, x)|^2 dt = \text{the probability of finding the particle in } A \text{ at time } t.$$

(Notice similarities to the heat equation.)

*Example 2.10 (Maxwell Equations in Free Space).*

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t} &= \nabla \times \mathbf{B} \\ \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} &= -\nabla \times \mathbf{E} \\ \nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} &= \nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0. \end{aligned}$$



Notice that

$$\frac{\partial^2 \mathbf{E}}{\partial t^2} = \nabla \times \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = -\nabla \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{E}) = \Delta \mathbf{E} - \nabla (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E}) = \Delta \mathbf{E}$$

and similarly,  $\frac{\partial^2 \mathbf{B}}{\partial t^2} = \Delta \mathbf{B}$  so that all the components of the electromagnetic fields satisfy the wave equation.

*Example 2.11 (Traffic Equation).* Consider cars travelling on a straight road with coordinate  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ , let  $u(t, x)$  denote the density of cars on the road at time  $t$  and location  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ , and  $v(t, x)$  be the velocity of the cars at  $(t, x)$ . Then for  $J = [a, b] \subset \mathbb{R}$ ,  $N_J(t) := \int_a^b u(t, x) dx$  is the number of cars in the set  $J$  at time  $t$ . We must have

$$\begin{aligned} \int_a^b \dot{u}(t, x) dx &= \dot{N}_J(t) = u(t, a)v(t, a) - u(t, b)v(t, b) \\ &= - \int_a^b \frac{\partial}{\partial x} [u(t, x)v(t, x)] dx. \end{aligned}$$

Since this holds for all intervals  $[a, b]$ , we must have

$$\dot{u}(t, x) = - \frac{\partial}{\partial x} [u(t, x)v(t, x)].$$

To make life more interesting, we may imagine that  $v(t, x) = -F(u(t, x), u_x(t, x))$ , in which case we get an equation of the form

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} u = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} G(u, u_x) \text{ where } G(u, u_x) = -u(t, x)F(u(t, x), u_x(t, x)).$$

A simple model might be that there is a constant maximum speed,  $v_m$  and maximum density  $u_m$ , and the traffic interpolates linearly between 0 (when  $u = u_m$ ) to  $v_m$  when  $(u = 0)$ , i.e.  $v = v_m(1 - u/u_m)$  in which case we get

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} u = -v_m \frac{\partial}{\partial x} (u(1 - u/u_m)).$$

*Example 2.12 (Burger's Equation).* Suppose we have a stream of particles travelling on  $\mathbb{R}$ , each of which has its own constant velocity and let  $u(t, x)$  denote the velocity of the particle at  $x$  at time  $t$ . Let  $x(t)$  denote the trajectory of the particle which is at  $x_0$  at time  $t_0$ . We have  $C = \dot{x}(t) = u(t, x(t))$ . Differentiating this equation in  $t$  at  $t = t_0$  implies

$$0 = [u_t(t, x(t)) + u_x(t, x(t))\dot{x}(t)]|_{t=t_0} = u_t(t_0, x_0) + u_x(t_0, x_0)u(t_0, x_0)$$

which leads to Burger's equation

$$0 = u_t + u u_x.$$

*Example 2.13 (Minimal surface Equation).* Let  $D \subset \mathbb{R}^2$  be a bounded region with reasonable boundary,  $u_0 : \partial D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a given function. We wish to find the function  $u : D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that  $u = u_0$  on  $\partial D$  and the graph of  $u$ ,  $\Gamma(u)$  has least area. Recall that the area of  $\Gamma(u)$  is given by

$$A(u) = \text{Area}(\Gamma(u)) = \int_D \sqrt{1 + |\nabla u|^2} dx.$$

Assuming  $u$  is a minimizer, let  $v \in C^1(D)$  such that  $v = 0$  on  $\partial D$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \frac{d}{ds} \Big|_0 A(u + sv) = \frac{d}{ds} \Big|_0 \int_D \sqrt{1 + |\nabla(u + sv)|^2} dx \\ &= \int_D \frac{d}{ds} \Big|_0 \sqrt{1 + |\nabla(u + sv)|^2} dx \\ &= \int_D \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + |\nabla u|^2}} \nabla u \cdot \nabla v \, dx \\ &= - \int_D \nabla \cdot \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + |\nabla u|^2}} \nabla u \right) v \, dx \end{aligned}$$

from which it follows that

$$\nabla \cdot \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + |\nabla u|^2}} \nabla u \right) = 0.$$

*Example 2.14 (Navier – Stokes).* Here  $u(t, x)$  denotes the velocity of a fluid and  $(t, x)$ ,  $p(t, x)$  is the pressure. The Navier – Stokes equations state,

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + \partial_u u = \nu \Delta u - \nabla p + f \quad \text{with } u(0, x) = u_0(x) \quad (2.19)$$

$$\nabla \cdot u = 0 \quad (\text{incompressibility}) \quad (2.20)$$

where  $f$  are the components of a given external force and  $u_0$  is a given divergence free vector field,  $\nu$  is the viscosity constant. The Euler equations are found by taking  $\nu = 0$ . Equation (2.19) is Newton's law of motion again,  $F = ma$ . See <http://www.claymath.org> for more information on this Million Dollar problem.

## 2.4 Worked Examples

*Example 2.15 (6.3 in book).* Slab / wire along  $[0, c]$  with surface conductance at the end being  $H$  and  $K$  being the thermal conductivity along the rod. Assume outside temperature at 0 is 0 and at  $c$  is  $T$ , Find the steady state temperature of the rod. The relevant heat equation is:

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma \delta u_t &= K u_{xx} \text{ with} \\ K u'(0) &= H(u(0) - \text{outside temp}) = H(u(0) - 0) \text{ and} \\ K u'(c) &= -H(u(c) - \text{outside temp}) = H(T - u(c)).\end{aligned}$$

Notice the signs used here. Recall that  $Ku'(x)$  represents the heat movement (or **Flux**) from right to left in the bar at location  $x$ , therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}K u'(0) &= \text{rate of heat leaving bar at } 0 \text{ while} \\ H(u(0) - \text{outside temp}) &= \text{rate of heat leaving bar at } 0 \text{ do surface conductance}\end{aligned}$$

Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned}K u'(c) &= \text{rate of heat entering bar at } c \text{ while} \\ H(u(c) - T) &= \text{rate of heat leaving bar at } 0 \text{ do surface conductance}\end{aligned}$$

and hence

$$K u'(c) = -H(u(c) - T) = H(T - u(c)).$$

So in steady state we have  $u_t = 0$  and so

$$u''(x) = 0 \text{ of } u(x) = mx + b.$$

Now

$$\begin{aligned}K m &= K u'(0) = H u(0) = H b \text{ and} \\ K m &= K u'(c) = H(T - u(c)) = H(T - mc - b)\end{aligned}$$

and so if we let  $h := H/K$ , then

$$\begin{aligned}m &= hb \text{ and} \\ m &= h(T - mc - b) = hT - hmc - hb = hT - hmc - m\end{aligned}$$

from which it follows that  $(2 + hc)m = hT$  or

$$m = \frac{hT}{2 + hc} \text{ and } b = \frac{m}{h} = \frac{T}{2 + hc}.$$

Thus the solution is given by

$$u(x) = \frac{T}{2 + hc} [hx + 1].$$

*Example 2.16 (10.1b in book.).* Solve  $u_{xy} = 2x$  for  $x, y > 0$  and  $u(0, y) = 0$  and  $u(x, 0) = x^2$ . Ans.,

$$u_x = 2xy + C(x)$$

and so

$$u(x, y) = x^2y + K(x) + F(y)$$

Since

$$u(x, 0) = x^2 = K(x) + F(0)$$

and

$$0 = u(0, y) = K(0) + F(y)$$

we have

$$x^2 = K(x) - K(0) \text{ and}$$

$$\begin{aligned} u(x, y) &= x^2y + K(x) - K(0) \\ &= x^2y + x^2 = x^2(y + 1). \end{aligned}$$

---

## Linear ODE

### 3.1 First order linear ODE

We would like to solve the ordinary differential equation

$$\dot{u}(t) = Au(t) \text{ with} \tag{3.1}$$

$$u(0) = f. \tag{3.2}$$

The method of **separation of variables** or **eigenvector expansions** proposed to begin by looking for solutions of the form  $u(t) = T(t)v$  to Eq. (3.1). Here  $v$  is a fixed vector in  $\mathbb{R}^N$  and  $T(t)$  is some unknown function of  $t$ . Substituting  $u(t) = T(t)v$  into Eq. (3.1) gives

$$\dot{T}(t)v = T(t)Av$$

or equivalently that

$$Av = \frac{\dot{T}(t)}{T(t)}v.$$

Since the left side of this equation is independent of  $t$  we must have

$$\frac{\dot{T}(t)}{T(t)} = \lambda \tag{3.3}$$

for some  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ . The solution to Eq. (3.3) is of course  $T(t) = e^{t\lambda}T(0)$  and therefore we have shown the following lemma.

**Lemma 3.1.** *If  $u(t) = T(t)v$  solves Eq. (3.1), then  $v$  is an **eigenvector** of  $A$  and if  $\lambda$  is the corresponding eigenvalue (i.e.  $Av = \lambda v$ ) then*

$$u(t) = e^{\lambda t}T(0)v.$$

*Conversely if  $Av = \lambda v$  then  $u(t) = e^{\lambda t}v$  solves Eq. (3.1).*

**Proposition 3.2 (Principle of superposition).** *If  $u(t)$  and  $v(t)$  solves Eq. (3.1) then so does  $u(t) + cv(t)$  for any  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ .*

**Proof.** This is a simple consequence of the fact that matrix multiplication and differentiation are linear operations. In detail,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt}(u(t) + cv(t)) &= \dot{u}(t) + c\dot{v}(t) = Au(t) + cAv(t) \\ &= A(u(t) + cv(t)). \end{aligned}$$

Consequently if  $Av_i = \lambda_i v_i$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$ , then ■

$$u(t) = \sum_i e^{t\lambda_i} v_i.$$

solves Eq. (3.1).

**Theorem 3.3.** *Suppose the matrix  $A$  is diagonalizable, i.e. there exists a basis  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^N$  for  $\mathbb{R}^N$  consisting of eigenvectors  $A$ . Then to any  $f \in \mathbb{R}^N$  there is a unique solution,  $u(t)$ , to Eqs. (3.1) and (3.2). Moreover, if we expand  $f$  in terms of the basis  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^N$  as*

$$f = \sum_{i=1}^N a_i v_i,$$

then the unique solution to Eqs. (3.1) and (3.2) is given by

$$u(t) = \sum_{i=1}^N a_i e^{t\lambda_i} v_i. \quad (3.4)$$

**Proof.** The fact that Eq. (3.4) solves Eqs. (3.1) and (3.2) follows from the principle of superposition and the fact that  $e^{t\lambda_i} = 1$  when  $t = 0$ .

Conversely, suppose that  $u$  solves Eqs. (3.1) and (3.2), then

$$u(t) = \sum_{i=1}^N a_i(t) v_i \quad (3.5)$$

for some functions  $a_i(t)$  with  $a_i(0) = a_i$ . Now on one hand

$$\dot{u}(t) = \sum_{i=1}^N \dot{a}_i(t) v_i$$

while on the other hand

$$\dot{u}(t) = Au(t) = A \sum_{i=1}^N a_i(t) v_i = \sum_{i=1}^N a_i(t) Av_i = \sum_{i=1}^N a_i(t) \lambda_i v_i.$$

Subtracting these two equations shows

$$0 = \sum_{i=1}^N \dot{a}_i(t) v_i - \sum_{i=1}^N a_i(t) \lambda_i v_i = \sum_{i=1}^N (\dot{a}_i(t) - a_i(t) \lambda_i) v_i.$$

Since  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^N$  is a basis for  $\mathbb{R}^N$  it follows, for all  $i$ , that

$$\dot{a}_i(t) = a_i(t) \lambda_i \text{ with } a_i(0) = a_i$$

and therefore,  $a_i(t) = e^{t\lambda_i} a_i$ . Putting this result back into Eq. (3.5) gives Eq. (3.4). ■

**Definition 3.4.** If  $f \in \mathbb{R}^N$  we will write  $e^{tA} f$  for the solution,  $u(t)$ , to Eqs. (3.1) and (3.2).

**Fact 3.5** Eqs. (3.1) and (3.2) have a unique solution independent as to whether  $A$  has a basis of eigenvectors or not. Moreover we may compute  $e^{tA}$  using the **matrix power series expansion**,

$$e^{tA} f = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^n}{n!} A^n f. \quad (3.6)$$

Notice that formula in Eq. (3.6) is consistent with our previous results. For example if  $v \in \mathbb{R}^N$  and  $Av = \lambda v$ , then  $A^n v = \lambda^n v$  and therefore,

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^n}{n!} A^n v = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^n}{n!} \lambda^n v = e^{t\lambda} v = e^{tA} v.$$

More generally, if  $u = \sum_{i=1}^k a_i v_i$  with  $Av_i = \lambda_i v_i$ , then

$$e^{tA} u = \sum_{i=1}^k a_i e^{t\lambda_i} v_i = \sum_{i=1}^k a_i e^{tA} v_i.$$

*Remark 3.6.* As the notation suggests, it is true that

$$e^{tA} e^{sA} = e^{(t+s)A}$$

as you are asked to prove in Exercise 3.1 below. **However**, it is **not** generally true that

$$e^{(A+B)} = e^A e^B = e^B e^A,$$

see Proposition 3.9 below.

*Example 3.7.* Let us find  $e^{tA}$  when

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The eigenvalues of  $A$  are given as the roots of the **characteristic polynomial**,

$$p(\lambda) = \det(A - \lambda I) = (1 - \lambda)(2 - \lambda)(3 - \lambda).$$

These roots are  $\lambda = 1$ ,  $\lambda = 2$ , and  $\lambda = 3$ . As usual we find the corresponding eigenvectors as solutions to the equation  $(A - \lambda I)u = 0$ . The result is, eigenvectors:

$$v_1 := \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow 1, \quad v_2 := \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow 2, \quad v_3 := \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow 3.$$

Since

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

and

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} - 2 \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

it follows that the columns of  $e^{tA}$  are given by

$$\begin{aligned} e^{tA} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} &= e^t \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \\ e^{tA} \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} &= e^{tA} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} - e^{tA} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = e^{2t} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} - e^t \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} e^{tA} \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} &= e^{tA} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} - 2e^{tA} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + e^{tA} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= e^{3t} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} - 2e^{2t} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + e^t \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

and therefore,

$$e^{tA} = \begin{bmatrix} e^t & -e^t + e^{2t} & e^t - 2e^{2t} + e^{3t} \\ 0 & e^{2t} & -2e^{2t} + 2e^{3t} \\ 0 & 0 & e^{3t} \end{bmatrix}.$$

*Example 3.8.* Let

$$A := \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 7 & -2 \\ 7 & 1 & -2 \\ -2 & -2 & 10 \end{bmatrix}.$$



Solve the equation

$$\dot{u}(t) = Au(t) \text{ with}$$

$$u(0) = v_1 + 2v_2 + 3v_3 = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + 2 \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + 3 \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

i.e.

$$u(0) = f = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 0 \\ 8 \end{bmatrix}.$$

**Answer.** Recall from Example 1.8 that  $A$  has eigenvectors

$$v_1 := \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow -6, \quad v_2 := \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow 6, \quad v_3 := \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow 12.$$

Therefore,

$$\frac{(f, v_1)}{|v_1|^2} = 1, \quad \frac{(f, v_2)}{|v_2|^2} = \frac{6}{3} = 2 \text{ and } \frac{(f, v_3)}{|v_3|^2} = \frac{18}{6} = 3$$

so that

$$f = v_1 + 2v_2 + 3v_3.$$

Therefore,

$$u(t) = e^{-6t}v_1 + 2e^{6t}v_2 + 3e^{12t}v_3$$

solves the ODE.

**Proposition 3.9.** *Let  $A$  and  $B$  be two  $N \times N$  matrices. Then the following are equivalent:*

1.  $0 = [A, B] := AB - BA$ .
2.  $e^{tA}B = Be^{tA}$  for all  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ ,
3.  $e^{tA}e^{sB} = e^{sB}e^{tA}$  for all  $s, t \in \mathbb{R}$ .

Moreover if  $[A, B] = 0$  then  $e^{(A+B)} = e^A e^B$  and in particular

$$e^{tA}e^{sA} = e^{(t+s)A} \text{ for all } s, t \in \mathbb{R}. \quad (3.7)$$

**Proof.** If  $[A, B] = 0$ , then

$$\frac{d}{dt}e^{tA}Be^{-tA} = e^{tA}[A, B]e^{-tA} = 0$$

and therefore,  $e^{tA}B = Be^{tA}$  for all  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ . It now follows that

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{ds}e^{tA}e^{sB} &= e^{tA}Be^{sB} = Be^{tA}e^{sB} \\ \frac{d}{ds}e^{sB}e^{tA} &= Be^{sB}e^{tA}\end{aligned}$$

and so by uniqueness of solutions to these ODE we conclude  $e^{tA}e^{sB} = e^{sB}e^{tA}$  for all  $s, t \in \mathbb{R}$ . If  $e^{tA}e^{sB} = e^{sB}e^{tA}$  for all  $s, t \in \mathbb{R}$  then

$$AB = \frac{d}{dt}\Big|_0 e^{tA}B = \frac{d}{dt}\Big|_0 \frac{d}{ds}\Big|_0 e^{tA}e^{sB} = \frac{d}{dt}\Big|_0 \frac{d}{ds}\Big|_0 e^{sB}e^{tA} = \frac{d}{dt}\Big|_0 Be^{tA} = BA.$$

For the last assertion, let  $T(t) := e^{tA}e^{tB}$ , then

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dt}T(t) &= Ae^{tA}e^{tB} + e^{tA}Be^{tB} = Ae^{tA}e^{tB} + Be^{tA}e^{tB} \\ &= (A+B)T(t) \text{ with } T(0) = I.\end{aligned}$$

So again by uniqueness of solutions,

$$e^{tA}e^{tB} = T(t) = e^{t(A+B)}.$$

■

### 3.2 Solving for $e^{tA}$ using the Spectral Theorem

*Example 3.10.* Let

$$A := \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{3}{2} \\ -\frac{3}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}$$

as in Example 1.6 with eigenvectors/eigenvalues given by

$$v_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \longleftrightarrow \lambda_1 = -1$$

and

$$v_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} \longleftrightarrow \lambda_2 = 2.$$

Recall that

$$f = \frac{1}{2}(v_1, f)v_1 + \frac{1}{2}(v_2, f)v_2$$

and hence

$$\begin{aligned}e^{tA}f &= \frac{1}{2}(v_1, f)e^{tA}v_1 + \frac{1}{2}(v_2, f)e^{tA}v_2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(v_1, f)e^{-t}v_1 + \frac{1}{2}(v_2, f)e^{2t}v_2.\end{aligned}\tag{3.8}$$

Taking  $f = e_1$  and  $f = e_2$  then implies

$$\begin{aligned}
e^{tA}e_1 &= \frac{1}{2}e^{tA}v_1 + \frac{1}{2}e^{tA}v_2 = \frac{1}{2}e^{-t}v_1 + \frac{1}{2}e^{2t}v_2 \\
&= \frac{1}{2}e^{-t} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + \frac{1}{2}e^{2t} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} e^{-t} + e^{2t} \\ e^{-t} - e^{2t} \end{bmatrix}.
\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
e^{tA}e_2 &= \frac{1}{2}e^{tA}v_1 - \frac{1}{2}e^{tA}v_2 = \frac{1}{2}e^{-t}v_1 - \frac{1}{2}e^{2t}v_2 \\
&= \frac{1}{2}e^{-t} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} - \frac{1}{2}e^{2t} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} e^{-t} - e^{2t} \\ e^{-t} + e^{2t} \end{bmatrix}.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus we may conclude that

$$e^{tA} = \begin{bmatrix} e^{tA}e_1 & e^{tA}e_2 \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} e^{-t} + e^{2t} & e^{-t} - e^{2t} \\ e^{-t} - e^{2t} & e^{-t} + e^{2t} \end{bmatrix}.$$

**Alternatively,** from Eq. (3.8)

$$e^{tA}f = \frac{1}{2}(v_1, f)e^{-t}v_1v_1^{\text{tr}}f + \frac{1}{2}e^{2t}v_2v_2^{\text{tr}}f$$

and therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
e^{tA} &= \frac{1}{2}(v_1, f)e^{-t}v_1v_1^{\text{tr}} + \frac{1}{2}e^{2t}v_2v_2^{\text{tr}} \\
&= \frac{1}{2}e^{-t} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} + \frac{1}{2}e^{2t} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} e^{-t} + e^{2t} & e^{-t} - e^{2t} \\ e^{-t} - e^{2t} & e^{-t} + e^{2t} \end{bmatrix}.
\end{aligned}$$

*Example 3.11.* The matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

has eigenvectors/eigenvalues given by

$$v_1 := \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow -1 \text{ and } v_2 := \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow -3$$

As usual, if  $f \in \mathbb{R}^2$  then

$$f = \frac{1}{2}(v_1, f)v_1 + \frac{1}{2}(v_2, f)v_2.$$

It then follows that

$$\begin{aligned} e^{tA}f &= \frac{1}{2}(v_1, f)e^{tA}v_1 + \frac{1}{2}(v_2, f)e^{tA}v_2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(v_1, f)e^{-t}v_1 + \frac{1}{2}(v_2, f)e^{-3t}v_2. \end{aligned}$$

Taking  $f = e_1$  and then  $f = e_2$  gives

$$\begin{aligned} e^{tA}e_1 &= \frac{1}{2}(v_1, e_1)e^{-t}v_1 + \frac{1}{2}(v_2, e_1)e^{-3t}v_2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2}e^{-t}v_1 - \frac{1}{2}e^{-3t}v_2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} e^{-t} + e^{-3t} \\ e^{-t} - e^{-3t} \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

and similarly

$$e^{tA}e_2 = \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} e^{-t} - e^{-3t} \\ e^{-t} + e^{-3t} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} e^{tA} &= [e^{tA}e_1 \ e^{tA}e_2] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} e^{-t} + e^{-3t} & e^{-t} - e^{-3t} \\ e^{-t} - e^{-3t} & e^{-t} + e^{-3t} \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

*Example 3.12.* Continuing the notation and using the results of Example 1.8,

$$A := \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 7 & -2 \\ 7 & 1 & -2 \\ -2 & -2 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

with eigenvectors/eigenvalues given by

$$v_1 := \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow -6, \quad v_2 := \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow 6, \quad v_3 := \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow 12.$$

and

$$f = \frac{1}{2}(f, v_1)v_1 + \frac{1}{3}(f, v_2)v_2 + \frac{1}{6}(f, v_3)v_3.$$

For example if  $f = (1, 2, 3)^{\text{tr}}$ , then

$$f = \frac{1}{2}v_1 + 2v_2 + \frac{1}{2}v_3$$

and hence

$$\begin{aligned} e^{tA} (1, 2, 3)^{\text{tr}} &= \frac{1}{2}e^{tA}v_1 + 2e^{tA}v_2 + \frac{1}{2}e^{tA}v_3 \\ &= \frac{1}{2}e^{-6t}v_1 + 2e^{6t}v_2 + \frac{1}{2}e^{12t}v_3. \end{aligned}$$

A straightforward but tedious computation shows

$$e^{tA} = \frac{1}{6} \begin{bmatrix} 3e^{-6t} + 2e^{6t} + e^{12t} & -3e^{-6t} + 2e^{6t} + e^{12t} & 2e^{6t} - 2e^{12t} \\ -3e^{-6t} + 2e^{6t} + e^{12t} & 3e^{-6t} + 2e^{6t} + e^{12t} & 2e^{6t} - 2e^{12t} \\ 2e^{6t} - 2e^{12t} & 2e^{6t} - 2e^{12t} & 2e^{6t} + 4e^{12t} \end{bmatrix}.$$

This can alternatively be done using a computer algebra package, which is what I did.

### 3.3 Second Order Linear ODE

We would like to solve the ordinary differential equation

$$\ddot{u}(t) = Au(t) \quad \text{with} \quad (3.9)$$

$$u(0) = f \quad \text{and} \quad \dot{u}(0) = g \quad (3.10)$$

for some  $f, g \in \mathbb{R}^N$  and  $A$  a  $N \times N$  matrix. Again we might begin by trying to find solutions to Eq. (3.9) by considering functions of the form  $u(t) = T(t)v$ . In order for  $u(t) = T(t)v$  to be a solution we must have

$$\ddot{T}(t)v = T(t)Av$$

and working as above we concluded that there must exist  $\lambda$  such that

$$\ddot{T}(t) = \lambda T(t) \quad \text{and} \quad Av = \lambda v.$$

The general solution to the equation

$$\ddot{T}(t) = \lambda T(t)$$

is

$$T(t) = c_\lambda(t)T(0) + s_\lambda(t)\dot{T}(0)$$

where

$$c_\lambda(t) := \begin{cases} \cos \sqrt{-\lambda}t & \text{if } \lambda \leq 0 \\ \cosh \sqrt{\lambda}t & \text{if } \lambda \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

and

$$s_\lambda(t) := \begin{cases} \frac{\sin \sqrt{-\lambda}t}{\sqrt{-\lambda}} & \text{if } \lambda < 0 \\ t & \text{if } \lambda = 0 \\ \frac{\sinh \sqrt{\lambda}t}{\sqrt{\lambda}} & \text{if } \lambda > 0. \end{cases}$$

**Theorem 3.13.** *Suppose the matrix  $A$  is diagonalizable, i.e. there exists a basis  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^N$  for  $\mathbb{R}^N$  consisting of eigenvectors  $A$  with corresponding eigenvalues  $\{\lambda_i\}_{i=1}^N \subset \mathbb{R}$ . Then for any  $f, g \in \mathbb{R}^N$  there is a unique solution,  $u(t)$ , to Eqs. (3.9) and (3.10). Moreover, if we expand  $f$  and  $g$  in terms of the basis  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^N$  as*

$$f = \sum_{i=1}^N a_i v_i \text{ and } g = \sum_{i=1}^N b_i v_i$$

then the unique solution to Eqs. (3.9) and (3.10) is given by

$$u(t) = \sum_{i=1}^N [a_i c_{\lambda_i}(t) + b_i s_{\lambda_i}(t)] v_i. \quad (3.11)$$

**Proof.** It is easy to check that  $u$  defined as in Eq. (3.11) solves Eqs. (3.9) and (3.10) which proves the existence of solutions. The uniqueness of solutions may also be proved similarly to what was done in Theorem 3.3. Indeed, suppose that

$$u(t) = \sum_{i=1}^N \alpha_i(t) v_i$$

then the equation,  $\ddot{u} = Au$ , is equivalent to

$$\sum_{i=1}^N \ddot{\alpha}_i(t) v_i = \ddot{u}(t) = Au(t) = \sum_{i=1}^N \alpha_i(t) Av_i = \sum_{i=1}^N \alpha_i(t) \lambda_i v_i$$

and since  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^N$  is a basis for  $\mathbb{R}^N$  we must have

$$\ddot{\alpha}_i(t) = \lambda_i \alpha_i(t) \text{ for all } i. \quad (3.12)$$

Moreover,

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^N a_i v_i = f = u(0) &= \sum_{i=1}^N \alpha_i(0) v_i \text{ and} \\ \sum_{i=1}^N b_i v_i = g = \dot{u}(0) &= \sum_{i=1}^N \dot{\alpha}_i(0) v_i \end{aligned}$$

implies that

$$\alpha_i(0) = a_i \text{ and } \dot{\alpha}_i(0) = b_i \text{ for all } i. \quad (3.13)$$

This completes the proof, since the unique solution to Eqs. (3.12) and (3.13) is given by

$$\alpha_i(t) = a_i c_{\lambda_i}(t) + b_i s_{\lambda_i}(t).$$

■

**Notation 3.14** From now on, let us agree that

$$\begin{aligned}\cos \sqrt{-\lambda}t &:= \cosh \sqrt{\lambda}t \text{ if } \lambda \geq 0 \\ \frac{\sin \sqrt{-\lambda}t}{\sqrt{-\lambda}} &:= \frac{\sinh \sqrt{\lambda}t}{\sqrt{\lambda}} \text{ if } \lambda > 0 \text{ and} \\ \frac{\sin \sqrt{-\lambda}t}{\sqrt{-\lambda}} &:= t \text{ if } \lambda = 0.\end{aligned}$$

With the above notation it is natural to write the general solution Eqs. (3.9) and (3.10) as

$$u(t) = \left(\cos \sqrt{-At}\right) f + \frac{\sin \sqrt{-At}}{\sqrt{-A}} g$$

with the understanding that

1.  $\cos \sqrt{-At}$  and  $\frac{\sin \sqrt{-At}}{\sqrt{-A}}$  are linear (i.e. matrices) and
2. if  $Av = \lambda v$  then

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\cos \sqrt{-At}\right) v &:= \left(\cos \sqrt{-\lambda}t\right) v \text{ and} \\ \frac{\sin \sqrt{-At}}{\sqrt{-A}} v &:= \frac{\sin \sqrt{-\lambda}t}{\sqrt{-\lambda}} v.\end{aligned}$$

*Example 3.15.* Continuing the notation and using the results of Example 1.8,

$$A := \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 7 & -2 \\ 7 & 1 & -2 \\ -2 & -2 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

with eigenvectors/eigenvalues given by

$$v_1 := \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow -6, \quad v_2 := \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow 6, \quad v_3 := \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow 12.$$

We will solve,

$$\begin{aligned}\ddot{u}(t) &= Au(t) \text{ with} \\ u(0) = f &= (1, 2, 3)^{\text{tr}} \text{ and } \dot{u}(0) = g = (1, -1, 1)^{\text{tr}}.\end{aligned}$$

As above we have

$$\begin{aligned}f &= \frac{1}{2}(f, v_1)v_1 + \frac{1}{3}(f, v_2)v_2 + \frac{1}{6}(f, v_3)v_3 \\ &= \frac{1}{2}v_1 + 2v_2 + \frac{1}{2}v_3\end{aligned}$$

and

$$g = 0v_1 + \frac{1}{3}v_2 + \frac{2}{6}(f, v_2)v_3 = \frac{1}{3}(2v_2 + v_3).$$

Therefore,

$$\cos(\sqrt{-At})f = \frac{1}{2}\cos(\sqrt{6t})v_1 + 2\cosh(\sqrt{6t})v_2 + \frac{1}{2}\cosh(\sqrt{12t})v_3$$

and

$$\frac{\sin(\sqrt{-At})}{\sqrt{-A}}g = \frac{1}{3}\left(2\frac{\sinh(\sqrt{6t})}{\sqrt{6}}v_2 + \frac{\sinh(\sqrt{12t})}{\sqrt{12}}v_3\right)$$

and the solution is given by

$$\begin{aligned} u(t) &= \cos(\sqrt{-At})f + \frac{\sin(\sqrt{-At})}{\sqrt{-A}}g \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\cos(\sqrt{6t})v_1 \\ &\quad + \left[2\cosh(\sqrt{6t}) + \frac{2}{3}\frac{\sinh(\sqrt{6t})}{\sqrt{6}}\right]v_2 \\ &\quad + \left[\frac{1}{2}\cosh(\sqrt{12t}) + \frac{1}{3}\frac{\sinh(\sqrt{12t})}{\sqrt{12}}\right]v_3. \end{aligned}$$

### 3.4 ODE Exercises

**Exercise 3.1.** Here you are asked to give another proof of Eq. (3.7). Let  $A$  be an  $N \times N$ , matrix,  $f \in \mathbb{R}^N$  and  $s, t \in \mathbb{R}$ . Show

$$e^{tA}e^{sA}f = e^{(t+s)A}f.$$

**Outline:** Let  $u(t) := e^{tA}e^{sA}f$  and  $v(t) = e^{(t+s)A}f$  and show both  $u$  and  $v$  solve the differential equation,

$$\dot{w}(t) = Aw(t) \text{ with } w(0) = e^{sA}f$$

and then use uniqueness of solutions of this equation (see Fact 3.5) to conclude that  $u(t) = v(t)$ .

**Exercise 3.2.** Let

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Show

$$e^{tA} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos t & \sin t \\ -\sin t & \cos t \end{pmatrix}$$

using the following three methods.



1. Showing

$$\frac{d}{dt} \begin{pmatrix} \cos t & \sin t \\ -\sin t & \cos t \end{pmatrix} = A \begin{pmatrix} \cos t & \sin t \\ -\sin t & \cos t \end{pmatrix}$$

and

$$\begin{pmatrix} \cos t & \sin t \\ -\sin t & \cos t \end{pmatrix} \Big|_{t=0} = I = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

and

2. by explicitly summing the series

$$e^{tA} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^n}{n!} A^n.$$

3. Show  $\frac{d^2}{dt^2} e^{tA} = -e^{tA}$  and then solve this equation using  $e^{tA}|_{t=0} = I$  and  $\frac{d}{dt}|_0 e^{tA} = A$ .

**Exercise 3.3.** Combine Exercises 3.1 and 3.2 to give a proof of the trigonometric identities:

$$\cos(s+t) = \cos s \cos t - \sin s \sin t \quad (3.14)$$

and

$$\sin(s+t) = \cos s \sin t + \cos t \sin s. \quad (3.15)$$

**Exercise 3.4.** Let  $a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}$  and

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & a & b \\ 0 & 0 & c \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Show

$$e^{tA} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & at & bt + \frac{1}{2}act^2 \\ 0 & 1 & ct \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

by summing the matrix power series. Also find  $e^{t(\lambda I + A)}$  where  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $I$  is the  $3 \times 3$  identity matrix.

**Exercise 3.5.** Let

$$A := \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

and

$$f = (1, 0, 2)^{\text{tr}} \quad \text{and} \quad g = (0, 1, 2)^{\text{tr}}.$$

be as in Exercise 1.2. Solve the following equations

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{u}(t) &= Au(t) \quad \text{with} \quad u(0) = f \quad \text{and} \\ \ddot{u}(t) &= Au(t) \quad \text{with} \quad u(0) = f \quad \text{and} \quad \dot{u}(0) = g. \end{aligned}$$

Write your solutions in the form

$$u(t) = \sum_{i=1}^3 a_i(t) v_i$$

where the functions  $a_i$  are to be determined.

**Hint:** Recall from Exercise 1.2 (you should have shown) that

$$v_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow 0, \quad v_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow -3, \quad v_3 = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow -3.$$

is an orthogonal basis of eigenvectors (with corresponding eigenvalues) for  $A$ .

---

## Linear Operators and Separation of Variables

**Definition 4.1.** A *linear combination* of the vectors  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^n \subset \mathbb{R}^3$  (or  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^n \subset V$  with  $V$  being any vector space) is a vector of the form,

$$c_1v_1 + c_2v_2 + \cdots + c_nv_n,$$

with  $\{c_i\}_{i=1}^n$  being real (or complex) constants.

We are going to be interested in the case that the vector space  $V$  consists of a class of functions on some domain,  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ . If  $u_1$  and  $u_2$  are functions on  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ , and  $c_1, c_2 \in \mathbb{R}$  we write  $(c_1u_1 + c_2u_2) =: u$  for the function,  $u : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$u(x) = c_1u_1(x) + c_2u_2(x) \text{ for all } x \in \Omega.$$

For example we may consider,  $u_1 + u_2$ ,  $u_1 + 3u_2$ , and  $\mathbf{0} = 0u_1 + 0u_2$ .

**Definition 4.2.** A *linear space of functions*,  $V$ , is a class of functions with common domain so that if  $u_1, u_2$  are in the class then so is  $c_1u_1 + c_2u_2$  for all  $c_1, c_2 \in \mathbb{R}$ , i.e. the space of functions  $V$  is closed under taking linear combinations.

*Example 4.3.*

$$\mathcal{D} = \{f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} : f \text{ is differentiable on } \mathbb{R}\}$$

or

$$\mathcal{C} = \{f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} : f \text{ is continuous on } \mathbb{R}\}.$$

Consider operator,  $L : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \{\text{all functions on } \mathbb{R}\}$  defined by  $Lf = f'$ . This operator is linear, namely, we have

$$L(c_1f_1 + c_2f_2) = (c_1f_1 + c_2f_2)' = c_1f_1' + c_2f_2' = c_1L(f_1) + c_2L(f_2).$$

It is interesting to note that  $L$  does not map  $\mathcal{D}$  to  $\mathcal{C}$ . For example, let

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 \sin \frac{1}{x} & x \neq 0 \\ 0 & x = 0 \end{cases}$$

then

$$f'(x) = \begin{cases} 2x \sin \frac{1}{x} - \cos \frac{1}{x} & x \neq 0 \\ \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{x^2 \sin \frac{1}{x}}{x} = 0 & x = 0 \end{cases}$$

so that  $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}$  however  $f' \notin \mathcal{C}$ .

**Definition 4.4.** A **Linear operator**, is a mapping,  $L$ , of one linear space of functions to another such that

$$L(c_1 u_1 + c_2 u_2) = c_1 L(u_1) + c_2 L(u_2)$$

for all  $u_1, u_2$  in the domain function space and  $c_1, c_2 \in \mathbb{R}$ .

An induction argument shows the linearity condition in Definition 4.4 implies

$$L\left(\sum_{i=1}^n c_i u_i\right) = \sum_{i=1}^n c_i L(u_i)$$

for all  $u_i$  in the domain function space and  $c_i \in \mathbb{R}$ .

*Example 4.5.* Let  $\Omega$  be some open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^2$ , for example  $\Omega = \mathbb{R}^2$  or  $\Omega = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2 | x_1^2 + x_2^2 < 5\}$  and let  $\mathcal{D}$  denote those functions  $u : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that  $u$  and all of its partial derivatives up to order two exist and are continuous. (In the future we denote this class of functions by  $C^2(\Omega)$ .) Then the following are example of linear operators taking  $\mathcal{D}$  to the class of continuous functions on  $\Omega$  :

1.  $Lu = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$
2.  $Lu = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y}$
3.  $(Lu)(x, y) = x \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}(x, y) + y \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}(x, y)$ .

Whereas, the following operator is an example of a non-linear operator;  $Lu = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} u + u^2$ . To see this operator is not linear, notice that

$$\begin{aligned} L(u_1 + u_2) &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x} u_1 + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} u_2 + (u_1 + u_2)^2 \\ &\neq \frac{\partial}{\partial x} u_1 + u_1^2 + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} u_2 + u_2^2 = Lu_1 + Lu_2. \end{aligned}$$

For example, let  $u_1 = \frac{1}{x}$  and  $u_2 = \frac{1}{x+5}$  (also see Exercise 13.9), then

$$\begin{aligned} L(u_1) &= -\frac{1}{x^2} + \frac{1}{x^2} = 0 \\ L(u_2) &= -\frac{1}{(x+5)^2} + \frac{1}{(x+5)^2} = 0 \end{aligned}$$

while

$$\begin{aligned} L(u_1 + u_2) &= L\left(\frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{x+5}\right) \\ &= \frac{-1}{x^2} - \frac{1}{(x+5)^2} + \left(\frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{x+5}\right)^2 \\ &= -\frac{1}{x^2} - \frac{1}{(x+5)^2} + \frac{1}{x^2} + \frac{1}{(x+5)^2} + \frac{2}{x(x+5)} = \frac{2}{x(x+5)} \neq 0. \end{aligned}$$

**Definition 4.6.** If  $L, M$  are two linear operators on the same class of functions we define  $L + M$

$$(L + M)(u) := Lu + Mu.$$

If  $M$  is a linear operator on the range-space of  $L$  we also define  $LM$  by  $((LM)u) = L(Mu)$ .

These new operators are still linear, for example,

$$\begin{aligned} (LM)(c_1u_1 + c_2u_2) &= L(c_1M(u_1) + c_2M(u_2)) \\ &= c_1L(M(u_1)) + c_2L(M(u_2)) \\ &= c_1(LM)(u_1) + c_2(LM)(u_2). \end{aligned}$$

However, it is in general not true (see Exercise 13.2) that  $LM = ML$ , in fact  $LM$  may be defined while  $ML$  is not defined. For example, let  $Lu = x^2u$  and  $Mu = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}u$  then taking  $u = e^{xy}$  we find

$$LM(u) = L\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x}e^{xy}\right) = L(y e^{xy}) = x^2y e^{xy}$$

while

$$M(Lu) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(x^2e^{xy}) = 2xe^{xy} + yx^2e^{xy} \neq LM(u).$$

In general, in this class we will be interested in linear differential operators of the form

$$Lu = Au_{xx} + Bu_{xy} + Cu_{yy} + Du_x + Eu_y + Fu$$

where  $A, B, C, D, E, F$  are functions of  $x$  and  $y$ . The homogeneous partial differential equations,  $Lu = 0$  is shorthand notation for  $u$  solving the equation,

$$Au_{xx} + Bu_{xy} + Cu_{yy} + Du_x + Eu_y + Fu = 0.$$

**Lemma 4.7 (Principle of Superposition).** If  $L$  is a linear differential operator as above and  $u_1$  and  $u_2$  solve the homogeneous partial differential equations,  $Lu_1 = 0$  and  $Lu_2 = 0$ , then any linear combination,  $c_1u_1 + c_2u_2$  also satisfies the same equation, namely,

$$L(c_1u_1 + c_2u_2) = 0.$$

*Example 4.8 (Homogeneous Wave Equation).* The wave equation  $u_{tt} = a^2 u_{xx}$ , is equivalent to writing  $Lu = 0$  where  $L = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} - a^2 \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2}$ . So if  $u_1, \dots, u_M$  are solutions to the wave equation, (i.e.,  $Lu_n = 0$ ), then any linear combination,

$$c_1 u_1 + \dots + c_n u_M,$$

is another solution as well. (See Exercises 13.4, 13.6, 13.8 for more on this and the issue of boundary conditions.) To be more explicit let us notice that

1. Show that  $u_n(t, x) := \sin(nx) \sin(ant)$  for  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  all solve the equation,  $Lu = 0$ . Indeed,

$$\begin{aligned} Lu_n &= \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} [\sin(nx) \sin(ant)] - a^2 \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} [\sin(nx) \sin(ant)] \\ &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\sin(nx) an \cos(ant)) - a^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial x} (n \cos(nx) \sin(ant)) \\ &= -a^2 n^2 \sin(nt) \sin(ant) - a^2 [-n^2 \sin(nx) \sin(ant)] = 0. \end{aligned}$$

2. So by the superposition principle,

$$u(x, y) = \sum_{n=1}^N c_n \sin(nx) \sin(ant)$$

with  $c_1, \dots, c_M \in \mathbb{R}$  also satisfies the wave equation. (Later we will allow for infinite linear combinations and we will then choose the constants,  $c_i$ , so that certain boundary conditions are satisfied.)

## 4.1 Introduction to Fourier Series

In this section, I would like to explain how certain functions like  $\sin nx$  and  $\cos nx$  are going to appear in our study of partial differential equations. Suppose  $L$  is the differential operator,  $L = \frac{d^2}{dx^2}$ , acting on functions on  $\Omega = [a, b]$ . Define the **inner product**,

$$(f, g) := \int_{\Omega=[a,b]} f(x) g(x) dx,$$

for functions  $f, g : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . Two integration by parts now shows,

$$\begin{aligned} (Lf, g) &= \int_{\Omega} f''(x) \cdot g(x) dx = - \int_{\Omega} f'(x) \cdot g'(x) dx + f'(x) g(x) \Big|_a^b \\ &= \int_{\Omega} f(x) \cdot g''(x) dx + [f'(x) g(x) - f(x) \cdot g'(x)] \Big|_a^b \\ &= (f, Lg) + [f'(x) g(x) - f(x) \cdot g'(x)] \Big|_a^b. \end{aligned}$$

There are now a number of **boundary conditions** that may be imposed on  $f$  and  $g$  so that boundary terms in the previous equation are zero. For example we may assume  $f, g \in D_{per}$  where  $D_{per}$  denotes those twice continuously differentiable functions such that  $f(b) = f(a)$  and  $f'(b) = f'(a)$ . Or we might assume  $f, g \in D_{Dirichlet}$  or  $f, g \in D_{Neumann}$  where  $D_{Dirichlet}$  ( $D_{Neumann}$ ) consists of those twice continuously differentiable functions such that  $f(a) = 0 = f(b)$  ( $f'(a) = 0 = f'(b)$ ). In any of these cases, we will have

$$(Lf, g) = (f, Lg)$$

and so in analogy with the Spectral Theorem 1.5 we should expect that  $L$  has an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors. Let us find these eigenvectors in a few examples. Before doing this it is useful to record a few integrals.

**Lemma 4.9.** *Let  $n$  be a positive integer, then*

$$\int_0^\pi \sin^2 nxdx = \int_0^\pi \cos^2 nxdx = \frac{\pi}{2}, \quad (4.1)$$

$$\int_{-\pi}^\pi \sin^2 nxdx = \int_{-\pi}^\pi \cos^2 nxdx = \pi, \quad (4.2)$$

and

$$\int_{-\pi}^\pi \sin nx \cos nxdx = 0. \quad (4.3)$$

**Proof.** Recall that

$$\cos 2\theta = \cos^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta = 1 - 2\sin^2 \theta = 2\cos^2 \theta - 1.$$

Therefore, taking  $\theta = nx$  and integrating we find,

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \frac{1}{2n} \sin 2nx \Big|_0^\pi = \int_0^\pi \cos 2nxdx \\ &= \int_0^\pi [1 - 2\sin^2 nx] dx = \int_0^\pi [2\cos^2 nx - 1] dx \\ &= \pi - 2 \int_0^\pi \sin^2 nxdx = 2 \int_0^\pi \cos^2 nxdx - \pi \end{aligned}$$

which gives Eq. (4.1). Similarly, replacing  $\int_0^\pi$  by  $\int_{-\pi}^\pi$  above shows Eq. (4.2) is valid as well. Finally,

$$\int_{-\pi}^\pi \sin nx \cos nxdx = \frac{1}{2n} \sin^2 nx \Big|_{-\pi}^\pi = 0 - 0 = 0.$$

■

*Example 4.10 (Fourier Series).* Let  $a = -\pi$  and  $b = \pi$ ,  $L = \frac{d^2}{dx^2}$  and  $D = D_{per}$  so that

$$(f, g) = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x) g(x) dx \quad (4.4)$$

and

$$(Lf, g) = -(f', g') = - \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f'(x) g'(x) dx = (f, Lg).$$

Thus if  $Lf = \lambda f$  with  $f \in D$  we have

$$\lambda (f, f) = (Lf, f) = - \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} [f'(x)]^2 dx \leq 0$$

from which it follows that  $\lambda \leq 0$ . So we need only look for negative eigenvalues. If  $\lambda = 0$  the eigenvalue equation becomes  $f'' = 0$  and hence  $f(x) = Ax + B$ . We will only have  $f \in D$  if  $A = 0$  and therefore let  $f_0 = 1$ .

We may now suppose that  $\lambda = -\omega^2 < 0$  in which case the eigenvalue equation becomes

$$f'' = -\omega^2 f$$

which has

$$f(x) = A \cos \omega x + B \sin \omega x$$

as the general solution. We still must enforce the boundary values. For example  $f(\pi) = f(-\pi)$  implies

$$A \cos(-\omega\pi) + B \sin(-\omega\pi) = A \cos \omega\pi + B \sin \omega\pi$$

or  $B \sin \omega\pi = 0$ . Similarly,  $f'(\pi) = f'(-\pi)$  implies

$$-\omega A \sin(-\omega\pi) + \omega B \cos(-\omega\pi) = -\omega A \sin \omega\pi + \omega B \cos \omega\pi$$

that  $A \sin \omega\pi = 0$ . Hence we either have  $A = B = 0$  (in which case  $f \equiv 0$  which is not allowed) or  $\sin \omega\pi = 0$  from which it follows that  $\omega = n \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Hence we have

$$\beta := \{\cos nx, \sin nx : n \in \mathbb{N}\} \cup \{1\}$$

as our possible eigenvectors. The eigenvalue associated to  $\cos nx$  and  $\sin nx$  is  $\lambda_n = -n^2$ . By Lemma 4.9,  $(\cos nx, \sin nx) = 0$ , so that  $\beta$  is an orthogonal set and moreover,

$$\begin{aligned} (\cos nx, \cos nx) &= (\sin nx, \sin nx) = \pi \text{ and} \\ (1, 1) &= 2\pi. \end{aligned}$$

Thus we expect that any reasonable function  $f$  on  $[-\pi, \pi]$  may be written as

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi} (f, 1) 1 + \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} [(f, \cos n(\cdot)) \cos nx + (f, \sin n(\cdot)) \sin nx]. \quad (4.5)$$

See Theorem 5.8, Theorem 5.17 and Theorem 7.2 below for more details on this point.



*Example 4.11 (Fourier Sine Series / Dirichlet boundary conditions).* Suppose  $a = 0$  and  $b = \pi$ ,  $L = \frac{d^2}{dx^2}$  and  $D = D_{\text{Dirichlet}}$  so if  $f, g \in D$  then  $f(0) = 0 = f(\pi)$ . We now take

$$(f, g) = \int_0^\pi f(x)g(x) dx$$

and working as in the previous example we find

$$u_n(x) = \sin nx \text{ with } \lambda_n = -n^2 \text{ for } n \in \mathbb{N}.$$

By Lemma 4.9,

$$(\sin n(\cdot), \sin n(\cdot)) = \frac{\pi}{2}$$

and so by Theorem 7.2,

$$f(x) = \frac{2}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (f, \sin n(\cdot)) \sin nx$$

for any “reasonable” function  $f$  on  $[0, \pi]$ .

*Example 4.12 (Fourier Cosine Series / Neumann boundary conditions).* Suppose  $a = 0$  and  $b = \pi$ ,  $L = \frac{d^2}{dx^2}$  and  $D = D_{\text{Neumann}}$  so if  $f, g \in D$  then  $f'(0) = 0 = f'(\pi)$ .

Again we take

$$(f, g) = \int_0^\pi f(x)g(x) dx$$

and we find the eigenfunctions and eigenvalues to be

$$u_n(x) = \cos nx \text{ with } \lambda_n = -n^2 \text{ for } n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}.$$

By Lemma 4.9,

$$(\cos n(\cdot), \cos n(\cdot)) = \frac{\pi}{2} \text{ for } n \in \mathbb{N}$$

$$\text{and } (1, 1) = \pi,$$

Thus Theorem 7.2 asserts that any “reasonable” function  $f$  on  $[0, \pi]$  may be written as

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} (f, 1) 1 + \frac{2}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (f, \cos n(\cdot)) \cos nx.$$

## 4.2 Application / Separation of variables

*Example 4.13.* Use “separation of variables” to solve the heat equation,

$$u_t(t, x) = u_{xx}(t, x) \text{ with } u(t, 0) = u(t, 5) = 0 \quad (4.6)$$

and  $u(0, x) = f(x)$ .

The technique is to first ignore the nonhomogeneous condition  $u(0, x) = f(x)$  and look for any solutions to the Eq. (4.6) of the form

$$u(t, x) = T(t)X(x).$$

From this we get,

$$\dot{T}(t)X(x) = T(t)X''(x)$$

or equivalently that

$$\frac{\dot{T}(t)}{T(t)} = \frac{X''(x)}{X(x)} = \lambda$$

where  $\lambda$  is a constant. Thus we require that

$$X''(x) = \lambda X(x) \text{ with } X(0) = 0 \text{ and } X(5) = 0.$$

The solutions to this Sturm-Liouville problem are given by

$$X_n(x) = \sin \frac{n\pi x}{5} \text{ with } \lambda = \lambda_n = -\left(\frac{n\pi}{5}\right)^2.$$

This then forces  $T_n(t) = e^{-t(\frac{n\pi}{5})^2}$ . Thus we find that

$$u_n(t, x) = e^{-t(\frac{n\pi}{5})^2} \sin \frac{n\pi x}{5}$$

are all solutions to Eq. (4.6). We then look for a general solution to our problem in the form

$$u(t, x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n u_n(t, x)$$

where we wish to choose the constants,  $b_n$  such that

$$f(x) = u(0, x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n u_n(0, x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin \frac{n\pi x}{5}.$$

Letting

$$(f, g) = \int_0^5 f(x)g(x)dx$$

we have

$$\left(\sin \frac{n\pi x}{5}, \sin \frac{m\pi x}{5}\right) = \delta_{mn} \frac{5}{2}$$

and therefore,

$$b_n = \frac{(f, \sin \frac{n\pi x}{5})}{(\sin \frac{n\pi x}{5}, \sin \frac{n\pi x}{5})} = \frac{2}{5} \int_0^5 f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{5} dx.$$

*Example 4.14.* Use separation of variables to solve Laplace's equation,

$$u_{xx}(x, y) + u_{yy}(x, y) = 0 \text{ for } 0 \leq x \leq 5 \text{ and } 0 \leq y \leq 2$$

with boundary conditions,

$$\begin{aligned} u(0, y) &= u(5, y) = 0, \\ u(x, 0) &= 0 \text{ and } u(x, 2) = f(x). \end{aligned}$$

To do this we will work as above and begin by ignoring the non-homogeneous boundary condition and solve the rest by separation of variables. So we write  $u(x, y) = X(x)Y(y)$  and require that

$$\frac{X''}{X} + \frac{Y''}{Y} = 0 \text{ with } X(0) = X(5) = 0 = Y(0).$$

As before we must have  $X'' = \lambda X$  and we know the solutions are given by

$$X_n(x) = \sin \frac{n\pi x}{5} \text{ with } \lambda = \lambda_n = -\left(\frac{n\pi}{5}\right)^2.$$

It then implies that

$$Y''(y) = \left(\frac{n\pi}{5}\right)^2 Y(y) \text{ with } Y(0) = 0.$$

From this we concluded that

$$Y_n(y) = \sinh \frac{n\pi y}{5}$$

and we find that

$$u_n(x, y) = \sin \frac{n\pi x}{5} \sinh \frac{n\pi y}{5}$$

in this case. So working as above we try to find a solution of the form

$$u(x, y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n u_n(x, y).$$

All the boundary conditions are now satisfied except for

$$f(x) = u(x, 2) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n u_n(x, 2) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sinh \frac{2n\pi}{5} \sin \frac{n\pi x}{5}.$$

By the same logic as above we must have

$$b_n \sinh \frac{2n\pi}{5} = \frac{2}{5} \int_0^5 f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{5} dx$$

and thus that

$$u(x, y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sinh \frac{2n\pi}{5} \sin \frac{n\pi x}{5}$$

with

$$b_n = \frac{2}{5 \sinh \frac{2n\pi}{5}} \int_0^5 f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{5} dx.$$

*Example 4.15.* Solve the wave equation, for  $0 \leq x \leq 5$  and  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ ,

$$u_{tt}(t, x) = u_{xx}(t, x) \text{ with } u(t, 0) = u(t, 5) = 0$$

and  $u(0, x) = f(x)$  and  $u_t(0, x) = 0$ .

We could go through separation of variables here to answer this question, but this is getting tedious. I will just write down the answer as

$$u(t, x) = \cos\left(\sqrt{-\partial_x^2} t\right) f(x).$$

As we have seen,

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin \frac{n\pi x}{5}$$

with

$$b_n = \frac{2}{5} \int_0^5 f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{5} dx$$

and hence

$$\begin{aligned} u(t, x) &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \cos\left(\sqrt{-\partial_x^2} t\right) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{5} \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \cos\left(\frac{n\pi t}{5}\right) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{5}. \end{aligned}$$

It is interesting to notice that since

$$\sin(A + B) = \cos A \sin B + \sin A \cos B$$

we have

$$\sin(A + B) + \sin(A - B) = 2 \sin A \cos B.$$

Thus we may write,

$$\sin \frac{n\pi x}{5} \cos\left(\frac{n\pi t}{5}\right) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \sin\left(\frac{n\pi(x+t)}{5}\right) + \sin\left(\frac{n\pi(x-t)}{5}\right) \right]$$

and thus

$$\begin{aligned} u(t, x) &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \left[ \sin\left(\frac{n\pi(x+t)}{5}\right) + \sin\left(\frac{n\pi(x-t)}{5}\right) \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} [F(x+t) + F(x-t)] \end{aligned}$$

where

$$F(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{5}\right)$$

= the 5 - periodic extensions of  $f(x)$ ,

i.e. if  $x = 5n + y$  with  $0 < y < 5$  and  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ , then  $F(x) = f(y)$ .

---

## Orthogonal Function Expansions

### 5.1 Generalities about inner products on function spaces

Let  $\Omega$  be a region in  $\mathbb{R}^d$  (most of the time  $d$  will be one for us) and  $p : \Omega \rightarrow (0, \infty)$  be a positive function. For functions  $f, g : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  define

$$(f, g) := \int_{\Omega} f(x) g(x) p(x) dx.$$

This is an example of a **inner product**, i.e. something that behaves like the dot product on  $\mathbb{R}^N$ . For example we still have the following properties:

$$\begin{aligned} (f_1 + cf_2, g) &= (f_1, g) + c(f_2, g) \\ (f, g) &= (g, f) \\ \|f\|^2 &:= (f, f) = 0 \text{ implies } f = 0. \end{aligned}$$

The following computation will be used frequently in this class:

$$\begin{aligned} \|f + g\|^2 &= (f + g, f + g) = \|f\|^2 + \|g\|^2 + (f, g) + (g, f) \\ &= \|f\|^2 + \|g\|^2 + 2(f, g). \end{aligned} \tag{5.1}$$

**Definition 5.1.** Two functions  $f, g : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  are **orthogonal** and we write  $f \perp g$  iff  $(f, g) = 0$ . More generally, a collection of functions,  $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1}^n$ , is an **orthogonal set** if  $\varphi_i \perp \varphi_j$  (i.e.  $(\varphi_i, \varphi_j) = 0$ ) for  $i \neq j$ . If we further have  $\|\varphi_i\| = 1$  then we say  $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1}^n$  is an **orthonormal set**.

**Exercise 5.1.** Put in some exercise on orthogonal sets from the book here.

**Theorem 5.2 (Schwarz Inequality).** For all  $f, g : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ ,

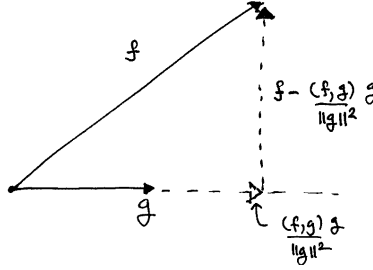
$$|(f, g)| \leq \|f\| \|g\|$$

and equality holds iff  $f$  and  $g$  are linearly dependent.

**Proof.** If  $g = 0$ , the result holds trivially. So assume that  $g \neq 0$  and observe; if  $f = \alpha g$  for some  $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$ , then  $(f, g) = \alpha \|g\|^2$  and hence

$$|(f, g)| = |\alpha| \|g\|^2 = \|f\| \|g\|.$$

Now suppose that  $f \in H$  is arbitrary, let  $h := f - \|g\|^{-2}(f, g)g$ . (So  $z$  is the “orthogonal projection” of  $f$  onto  $g$ , see Figure 5.1.) Then



**Fig. 5.1.** The picture behind the proof of the Schwarz inequality.

$$\begin{aligned} 0 \leq \|h\|^2 &= \left\| f - \frac{(f, g)}{\|g\|^2} g \right\|^2 = \|f\|^2 + \frac{(f, g)^2}{\|g\|^4} \|g\|^2 - 2 \left( f, \frac{(f, g)}{\|g\|^2} g \right) \\ &= \|f\|^2 - \frac{(f, g)^2}{\|g\|^2} \end{aligned}$$

from which it follows that  $0 \leq \|g\|^2 \|f\|^2 - (f, g)^2$  with equality iff  $h = 0$  or equivalently iff  $f = \|g\|^{-2}(f, g)g$ . ■

**Corollary 5.3 (Triangle inequality).** Let  $f, g : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be functions and  $a \in \mathbb{R}$ , then

$$\|f + g\| \leq \|f\| + \|g\| \quad \text{and} \tag{5.2}$$

$$\|af\| = |a| \|f\|. \tag{5.3}$$

**Proof.**

$$\begin{aligned} \|f + g\|^2 &= \|f\|^2 + \|g\|^2 + 2(f, g) \\ &\leq \|f\|^2 + \|g\|^2 + 2\|f\| \|g\| = (\|f\| + \|g\|)^2. \end{aligned}$$

Taking the square root of this inequality shows Eq. (5.2) holds. Taking the square root of the identity,

$$\|af\|^2 = \int_{\Omega} |a|^2 |f(x)|^2 dx = |a|^2 \int_{\Omega} |f(x)|^2 dx = |a|^2 \|f\|^2,$$

proves Eq. (5.3). ■

**Proposition 5.4 (Pythagorean's Theorem).** *Suppose that  $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1}^n$  is an orthogonal set, then*

$$\left\| \sum_{i=1}^n \varphi_i \right\|^2 = \sum_{i=1}^n \|\varphi_i\|^2. \quad (5.4)$$

**Proof.** Let  $s := \sum_{i=1}^n \varphi_i$ , then

$$\|s\|^2 = (s, s) = \left( \sum_{i=1}^n \varphi_i, s \right) = \sum_{i=1}^n (\varphi_i, s)$$

and

$$(\varphi_i, s) = \left( \varphi_i, \sum_{j=1}^n \varphi_j \right) = \sum_{j=1}^n (\varphi_i, \varphi_j) = (\varphi_i, \varphi_i) = \|\varphi_i\|^2.$$

The last two equations proves Eq. (5.4). ■

**Theorem 5.5 (Best Approximation Theorem).** *Suppose  $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1}^n$  is an orthonormal set and  $a_i \in \mathbb{R}$ , then*

$$\left\| f - \sum_{i=1}^n a_i \varphi_i \right\|^2 = \left\| f - \sum_{i=1}^n (f, \varphi_i) \varphi_i \right\|^2 + \sum_{i=1}^n |(f, \varphi_i) - a_i|^2 \quad (5.5)$$

and therefore the best approximation to  $f$  by functions of the form  $\sum_{i=1}^n a_i \varphi_i$  occurs when  $a_i = (f, \varphi_i)$ .

**Proof.** The function (vector),

$$h := f - \sum_{i=1}^n (f, \varphi_i) \varphi_i,$$

is orthogonal to  $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1}^n$  since

$$\begin{aligned} (h, \varphi_j) &= \left( f - \sum_{i=1}^n (f, \varphi_i) \varphi_i, \varphi_j \right) = (f, \varphi_j) - \sum_{i=1}^n (f, \varphi_i) (\varphi_i, \varphi_j) \\ &= (f, \varphi_j) - \sum_{i=1}^n (f, \varphi_i) \delta_{ij} = (f, \varphi_j) - (f, \varphi_j) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Since

$$\begin{aligned} f - \sum_{i=1}^n a_i \varphi_i &= f - \sum_{i=1}^n (f, \varphi_i) \varphi_i + \sum_{i=1}^n [(f, \varphi_i) - a_i] \varphi_i \\ &= h + \sum_{i=1}^n [(f, \varphi_i) - a_i] \varphi_i, \end{aligned}$$



it follows by Pythagorean's Theorem, Proposition 5.4, that

$$\begin{aligned} \left\| f - \sum_{i=1}^n a_i \varphi_i \right\|^2 &= \|h\|^2 + \sum_{i=1}^n \|(f, \varphi_i) - a_i\|^2 \\ &= \|h\|^2 + \sum_{i=1}^n |(f, \varphi_i) - a_i|^2 \\ &= \left\| f - \sum_{i=1}^n (f, \varphi_i) \varphi_i \right\|^2 + \sum_{i=1}^n |(f, \varphi_i) - a_i|^2. \end{aligned}$$

■

**Definition 5.6.** Let  $f$  be a function such that  $\int_{\Omega} |f(x)|^2 p(x) dx < \infty$  and  $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1}^{\infty}$  be an orthonormal set, we will write  $f \sim \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} (f, \varphi_i) \varphi_i$  to mean

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_{\Omega} \left| f(x) - \sum_{i=1}^n (f, \varphi_i) \varphi_i(x) \right|^2 p(x) dx \\ = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left\| f - \sum_{i=1}^n (f, \varphi_i) \varphi_i \right\|^2 = 0. \end{aligned}$$

We say  $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1}^{\infty}$  is **complete** (or **closed** in the book's terminology) if  $f \sim \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} (f, \varphi_i) \varphi_i$  whenever  $\|f\|^2 < \infty$ .

**Corollary 5.7 (Bessel's (In)equality).** Suppose  $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1}^{\infty}$  is an orthonormal set, then

$$\sum_{i=1}^n |(f, \varphi_i)|^2 \leq \|f\|^2 \text{ for all } f, \quad (5.6)$$

Moreover we get equality iff  $f = \sum_{i=1}^n (f, \varphi_i) \varphi_i$ . These statements remain true even when  $n = \infty$  provided we interpret,  $f = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} (f, \varphi_i) \varphi_i$  to mean  $f \sim \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} (f, \varphi_i) \varphi_i$ . So we have  $f \sim \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} (f, \varphi_i) \varphi_i$  iff Pythagorean's theorem holds, i.e. iff

$$\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} |(f, \varphi_i)|^2 = \|f\|^2.$$

**Proof.** Taking  $a_i = 0$  in Eq. (5.5) shows

$$\|f\|^2 = \left\| f - \sum_{i=1}^n (f, \varphi_i) \varphi_i \right\|^2 + \sum_{i=1}^n |(f, \varphi_i)|^2$$

and hence that

$$\sum_{i=1}^n |(f, \varphi_i)|^2 = \|f\|^2 - \left\| f - \sum_{i=1}^n (f, \varphi_i) \varphi_i \right\|^2 \leq \|f\|^2$$

with equality iff  $f = \sum_{i=1}^n (f, \varphi_i) \varphi_i$ . Letting  $n \rightarrow \infty$  in the previous equation shows,

$$\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} |(f, \varphi_i)|^2 = \|f\|^2 - \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left\| f - \sum_{i=1}^n (f, \varphi_i) \varphi_i \right\|^2 \leq \|f\|^2$$

with equality iff

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left\| f - \sum_{i=1}^n (f, \varphi_i) \varphi_i \right\|^2 = 0,$$

i.e. iff  $f \sim \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} (f, \varphi_i) \varphi_i$ . ■

## 5.2 Convergence of the Fourier Series

For this section it will be convenient to define

$$(f, g) = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(y) g(y) \frac{1}{\pi} dy$$

Recall from Example 4.10, if  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is “reasonable”  $2\pi$ -periodic function (i.e.  $f(x + 2\pi) = f(x)$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ ), we expect by analogy with the finite dimensional spectral theorem that

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{2}a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} [a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx] \quad (5.7)$$

where

$$a_n := (f, \cos n(\cdot)) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(y) \cos ny \, dy \text{ for } n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$$

and

$$b_n := (f, \sin n(\cdot)) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(y) \sin ny \, dy \text{ for } n = 1, 2, \dots$$

The following theorem gives a precise version of this statement.

**Theorem 5.8 (Fourier Convergence Theorem).** *Let  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a  $2\pi$ -periodic function which is piecewise continuous on  $(-\pi, \pi)$ . Then at points  $x \in X$  where  $f'(x_{\pm})$  exist we have*

$$\frac{1}{2}a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} [a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx] = \frac{f(x+) + f(x-)}{2}.$$

**Fact 5.9** If  $f : [-\pi, \pi] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is any function such that  $\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} |f(x)|^2 dx < \infty$ , we may still define

$$f_N(x) = \frac{1}{2}a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^N [a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx]$$

with  $a_n$  and  $b_n$  as above. With this definition we will always have,

$$\frac{1}{\pi} \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} |f(x) - f_N(x)|^2 dx = \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \|f - f_N\|^2 = 0,$$

i.e. that

$$f(x) \sim \frac{1}{2}a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} [a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx].$$

### 5.3 Examples

*Remark 5.10.* We will use the following identities repeatedly.

$$\sin(A+B) = \cos A \sin B + \sin A \cos B, \quad (5.8)$$

$$\cos(A+B) = \cos A \cos B - \sin A \sin B, \quad (5.9)$$

$$\sin A \cos B = \frac{1}{2} (\sin(A+B) + \sin(A-B)) \quad (5.10)$$

$$\cos A \cos B = \frac{1}{2} (\cos(A+B) + \cos(A-B)) \quad (5.11)$$

$$\sin A \sin B = \frac{1}{2} (\cos(A-B) - \cos(A+B)). \quad (5.12)$$

*Example 5.11.* Suppose

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } 0 < x < \pi \\ -1 & \text{if } -\pi < 0 < x \end{cases},$$

then  $a_n := (f, \cos n(\cdot)) = 0$  because  $f$  is odd while

$$\begin{aligned} b_n &= (f, \sin n(\cdot)) = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi} \sin ny \, dy = -\frac{2}{\pi n} \cos ny \Big|_0^{\pi} \\ &= \frac{2}{\pi n} (1 - \cos n\pi) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } n \text{ is even} \\ \frac{4}{\pi n} & \text{if } n \text{ is odd.} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

Thus we conclude that

$$f(x) \sim \sum_{n \text{ odd}} \frac{4}{\pi n} \sin nx = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{4}{\pi(2n-1)} \sin(2n-1)x.$$

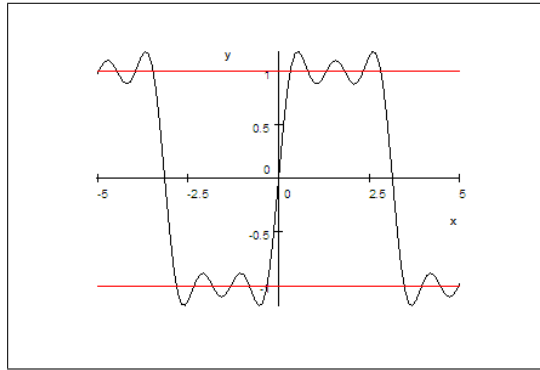
The series converges for every  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $x \in (-\pi, \pi) \setminus \{0\}$  it converges to  $f(x)$  and at  $x = 0$  it converges to 0. By the way, by Bessel's equality we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{4}{\pi(2n-1)} \right)^2 &= \|f\|^2 = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} |f(x)|^2 dx \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} 1 dx = 2 \end{aligned}$$

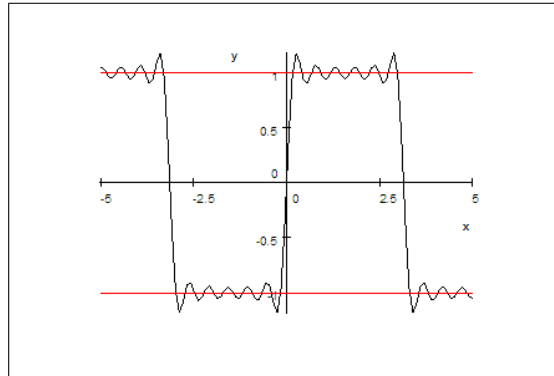
and hence we conclude that

$$1 + \frac{1}{9} + \frac{1}{25} + \frac{1}{49} + \cdots = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2n-1)^2} = \frac{\pi^2}{8}.$$

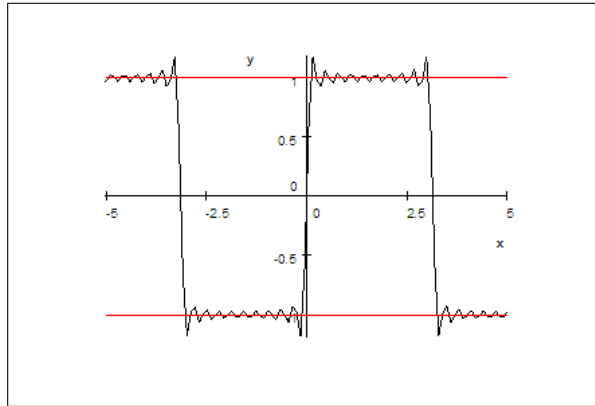
Here are some related graphs wherein  $f_N(x) := \sum_{n=1:N, n \text{ odd}} \frac{4}{\pi n} \sin nx$ .



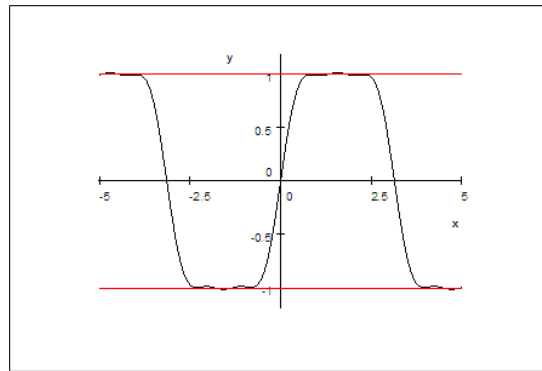
**Fig. 5.2.** A plot of  $f_5(x) = \frac{4}{\pi} (\sin x + \frac{1}{3} \sin 3x + \frac{1}{5} \sin 5x)$ , which is approximating  $f(x)$ .



**Fig. 5.3.** A plot of  $f_{11}(x)$ .



**Fig. 5.4.** A plot of  $f_{19}(x)$ . These last few picture illustrate what is known as the Gibb's effect; namely the convergence is not uniform. There is always the pesky little bump appearing near 0 (and  $\pm\pi$ ).



**Fig. 5.5.** A plot (at  $t = 1/2$ ) of  $\frac{4}{\pi} (e^{-t} \sin x + \frac{1}{3}e^{-9t} \sin 3x + \frac{1}{5}e^{-25t} \sin 5x)$  which is approximating the solution to the heat equation with periodic boundary condtions and with initial condition,  $u(0, x) = f(x)$ .

The following lemma will be useful in simplifying the computations in some of the examples below.

**Lemma 5.12.** *Suppose  $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a continuous function and  $p(x) = \sum_{k=0}^n p_k x^k$  is a polynomial, then*

$$\int f p dx = p F_1 - p' F_2 + p'' F_3 - \cdots + (-1)^n p^{(n)} F_{n+1} + C$$

where

$$F_1 = \int f dx \text{ and } F_{k+1} = \int F_k dx.$$

**Proof.** This is simply a matter of repeated integration by parts. Explicitly,

$$\begin{aligned}\int f p dx &= \int F_1' p dx = F_1 p - \int F_1 p' dx + C. \\ \int F_1 p' dx &= F_2 p' - \int F_2 p'' dx + C\end{aligned}$$

and hence

$$\begin{aligned}\int f p dx &= \int F_1' p dx = F_1 p - F_2 p' + \int F_2 p'' dx + C \\ &= F_1 p - F_2 p' + F_2 p'' dx - \int F_3 p^{(3)} dx + C,\end{aligned}$$

etc. ■

Using this fact we may now compute the Fourier series of a number of functions.

*Example 5.13.* Let  $(f, g) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x) g(x) dx$ , then

1.

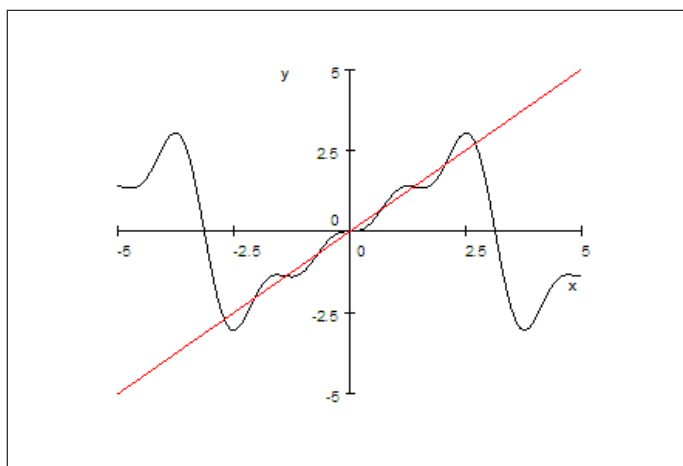
$$\begin{aligned}(x, 1) &= 0, \quad (x, \cos nx) = 0 \text{ by symmetry and} \\ (x, \sin nx) &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} x \sin nx dx = \left[ x \left( -\frac{1}{n} \cos nx \right) - \frac{1}{n^2} \sin nx \right]_{-\pi}^{\pi} \\ &= \frac{1}{n} [-2 \cos n\pi] = \frac{2}{n} (-1)^{n+1}\end{aligned}$$

wherein we have used

$$\begin{aligned}F_1 &= \int \sin nx dx = -\frac{1}{n} \cos nx \text{ and} \\ F_2 &= -\frac{1}{n} \int \cos nx dx = \frac{1}{n^2} \sin nx.\end{aligned}$$

Thus we expect that

$$x = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{n} (-1)^{n+1} \sin nx = 2 \left( \frac{1}{1} \sin x - \frac{1}{2} \sin 2x + \frac{1}{3} \sin 3x - \frac{1}{4} \sin 4x + \dots \right).$$

Plot of  $x$  and

$$\frac{2}{1} \sin x - \frac{2}{2} \sin 2x + \frac{2}{3} \sin 3x - \frac{2}{4} \sin 4x$$

2.  $f(x) = x^2$  – expansion.

$(x^2, \sin nx) = 0$  by symmetry and

$$\begin{aligned} (x^2, \cos nx) &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} x^2 \cos nx dx \\ &= \left[ x^2 \left( \frac{1}{n} \sin nx \right) + 2x \frac{1}{n^2} \cos nx - 2 \frac{\sin nx}{n^3} \right]_{-\pi}^{\pi} \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} 2\pi \frac{1}{n^2} [\cos n\pi + \cos n(-\pi)] = 4 \frac{1}{n^2} (-1)^n \end{aligned}$$

wherein we have used

$$\begin{aligned} F_1 &= \int \cos nx dx = \frac{1}{n} \sin nx, \\ F_2 &= \int \frac{1}{n} \sin nx dx = -\frac{1}{n^2} \cos nx \text{ and} \\ F_3 &= \int -\frac{1}{n^2} \cos nx dx = -\frac{1}{n^3} \sin nx. \end{aligned}$$

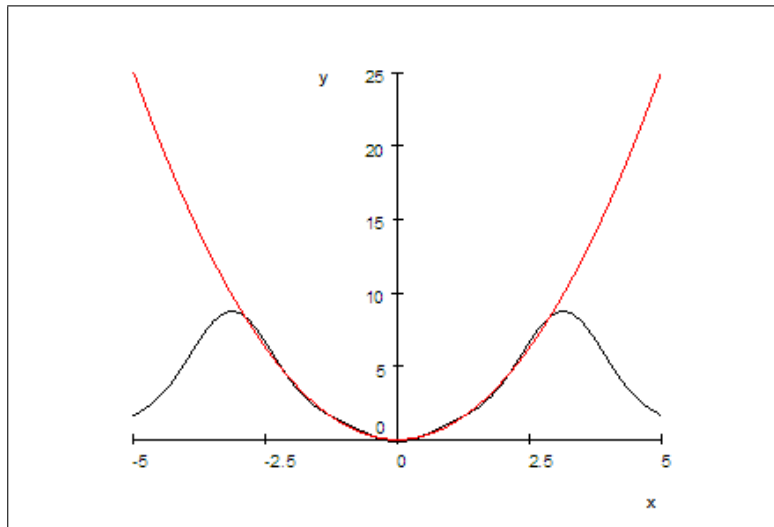
We also have

$$(x^2, 1) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} x^2 dx = \frac{x^3}{3} \Big|_{-\pi}^{\pi} = \frac{2\pi^2}{3}$$

Thus we expect from Eq. (4.5) that



$$\begin{aligned}
x^2 &= \frac{1}{2} (x^2, 1) 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} [(x^2, \cos n(\cdot)) \cos nx + (x^2, \sin n(\cdot)) \sin nx] \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \frac{2\pi^2}{3} 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 4 \frac{1}{n^2} (-1)^n \cos nx \\
&= \frac{\pi^2}{3} + 4 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n^2} \cos nx \\
&= \frac{\pi^2}{3} + 4 \left[ -\cos x + \frac{1}{2^2} \cos 2x - \frac{1}{3^2} \cos 3x + \dots \right].
\end{aligned}$$

Plot of  $x^2$  (in red) and

$$\frac{\pi^2}{3} + 4 \left[ -\cos x + \frac{1}{2^2} \cos 2x - \frac{1}{3^2} \cos 3x + \dots \right]$$

3. Integrating the equation,

$$x^2 = \frac{\pi^2}{3} + 4 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n^2} \cos nx,$$

one expects,

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{x^3}{3} &= \frac{\pi^2}{3}x + 4 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n \sin nx}{n^2} \frac{1}{n} \\
&= \frac{\pi^2}{3} \left[ 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{n+1} \sin nx}{n} \right] - 4 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{n^3} \sin nx \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[ \frac{2\pi^2}{3} \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{n} - 4 \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{n^3} \right] \sin nx \\
&= 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{n+1} \left[ \frac{(\pi n)^2 - 6}{3n^3} \right] \sin nx
\end{aligned}$$

and hence that

$$x^3 = 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{n+1} \left[ \frac{(\pi n)^2 - 6}{3n^3} \right] \sin nx$$

also see top of page 77 of the book

4. The expansions for functions of the form  $f(x) = ax + bx^2 + cx^3$  are now easily found. For example, if

$$x^2 - \pi x = \frac{\pi^2}{3} + 4 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n^2} \cos nx - \pi \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{n} (-1)^{n+1} \sin nx.$$

The plots of this function and the following approximation,

$$S_2(x) = \frac{\pi^2}{3} + 4 \left( \frac{-1}{1^2} \cos x + \frac{1}{2^2} \cos 2x \right) - 2\pi \left( \frac{1}{1} \sin x - \frac{1}{2} \sin 2x \right),$$

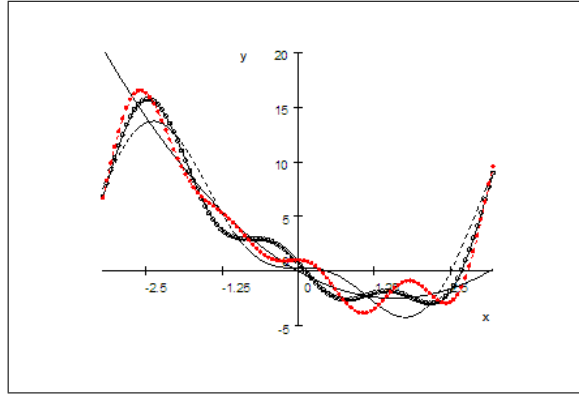
$$\begin{aligned}
S_3(x) &= \frac{\pi^2}{3} + 4 \left( \frac{-1}{1^2} \cos x + \frac{1}{2^2} \cos 2x + \frac{1}{3^2} \cos 3x \right) \\
&\quad - 2\pi \left( \frac{1}{1} \sin x - \frac{1}{2} \sin 2x + \frac{1}{3} \sin 3x \right)
\end{aligned}$$

and

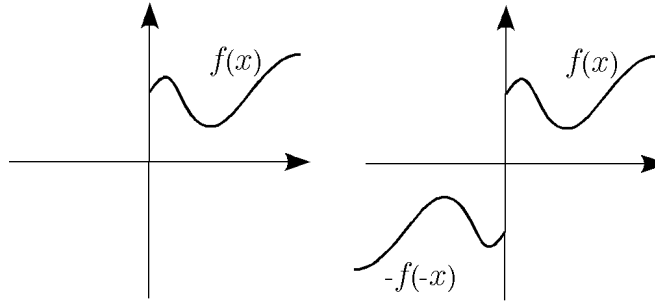
$$\begin{aligned}
S_4(x) &= \frac{\pi^2}{3} + 4 \left( \frac{-1}{1^2} \cos x + \cdots + \frac{1}{4^2} \cos 4x \right) \\
&\quad - 2\pi \left( \frac{1}{1} \sin x - \frac{1}{2} \sin 2x + \frac{1}{3} \sin 3x - \frac{1}{4} \sin 4x \right)
\end{aligned}$$

are given in Figure 5.6 below.

*Example 5.14.* Suppose that  $f(x)$  is a function defined for  $0 \leq x \leq \pi$ . Suppose we extend  $f$  to be an odd function by setting



**Fig. 5.6.** Plot of  $x^2 - \pi x$  and the approximations,  $S_2$ ,  $S_3$ , and  $S_4$ . Notice that the approximations are not doing so well at the end points. This is because they are converging to  $\pi^2$  at  $x = \pi$  and  $x = -\pi$ .



**Fig. 5.7.** The function  $f$  with its extension to an odd function on  $[-\pi, \pi]$ .

$$F(x) := \begin{cases} f(x) & \text{if } 0 < x < \pi \\ -f(-x) & \text{if } -\pi < x < 0, \end{cases}$$

see Figure 5.7. Then computing the Fourier series of  $F$ , we learn

$$a_n := (F, \cos n(\cdot)) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} F(y) \cos ny \, dy = 0 \text{ for } n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$$

and

$$b_n := (F, \sin n(\cdot)) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} F(y) \sin ny \, dy = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(y) \sin ny \, dy.$$

From this we learn that

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{2}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(y) \sin ny \, dy \right) \sin nx.$$

Notice that  $\{\sin ny : n \in \mathbb{N}\}$  form an orthonormal set relative to the inner product,

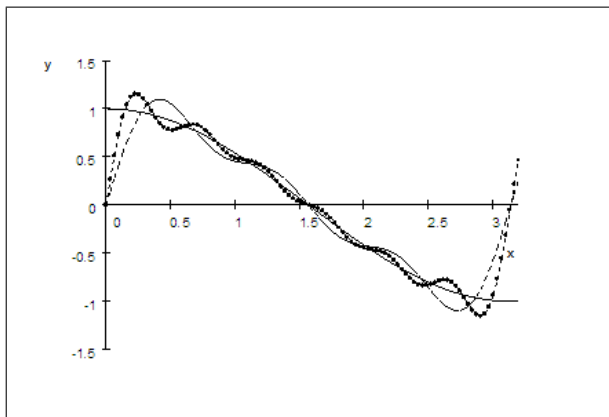
$$(f, g) := \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\pi f(x) g(x) dx.$$

As an explicit example, let us consider the sin - series expansion of  $\cos x$  for  $0 < x < \pi$ . For this we have

$$\begin{aligned} b_n &= \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\pi \cos y \sin ny \, dy \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\pi (\sin((n+1)y) + \sin((n-1)y)) \, dy \\ &= -\frac{1}{\pi} \left( \frac{\cos((n+1)y)}{n+1} + \frac{\cos((n-1)y)}{n-1} \right)_0^\pi \\ &= -\frac{1}{\pi} \left( \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{n+1} + \frac{(-1)^{n-1}}{n-1} - \frac{1}{n+1} - \frac{1}{n-1} \right) \\ &= -1_{n\text{-even}} \frac{-2}{\pi} \left( \frac{1}{n+1} + \frac{1}{n-1} \right) = 1_{n\text{-even}} \frac{2}{\pi} \frac{2n}{n^2-1} \\ &= 1_{n\text{-even}} \frac{4}{\pi} \frac{n}{n^2-1} \end{aligned}$$

and we conclude that

$$\begin{aligned} \cos x &= \frac{4}{\pi} \sum_{n=2,4,6,\dots} \frac{n}{n^2-1} \sin nx \\ &= \frac{4}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2n}{4n^2-1} \sin 2nx. \end{aligned}$$

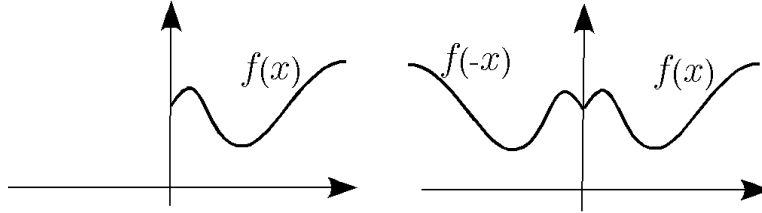


Here is a plot of  $\cos x$  along with  $\frac{4}{\pi} \left( \frac{2}{2^2-1} \sin 2x + \frac{4}{4^2-1} \sin 4x + \frac{6}{6^2-1} \sin 6x \right)$   
and  $\frac{4}{\pi} \left( \frac{2}{2^2-1} \sin 2x + \dots + \frac{12}{12^2-1} \sin 12x \right)$

*Example 5.15.* Suppose that  $f(x)$  is a function defined for  $0 \leq x \leq \pi$ . Suppose we extend  $f$  to be an even function by setting

$$F(x) := \begin{cases} f(x) & \text{if } 0 < x < \pi \\ f(-x) & \text{if } -\pi < x < 0, \end{cases}$$

see Figure 5.8. Then computing the Fourier series of  $F$ , we learn



**Fig. 5.8.** The function  $f$  with its extension to an even function on  $[-\pi, \pi]$ .

$$a_n := (F, \cos n(\cdot)) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} F(y) \cos ny \, dy = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi} f(y) \cos ny \, dy$$

and

$$b_n := (F, \sin n(\cdot)) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} F(y) \sin ny \, dy = 0.$$

From this we learn that

$$f(x) = \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos nx$$

where

$$a_n := \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi} f(y) \cos ny \, dy.$$

Notice that  $\{\cos ny : n \in \mathbb{N}\} \cup \left\{ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \right\}$  form an orthonormal set relative to the inner product,

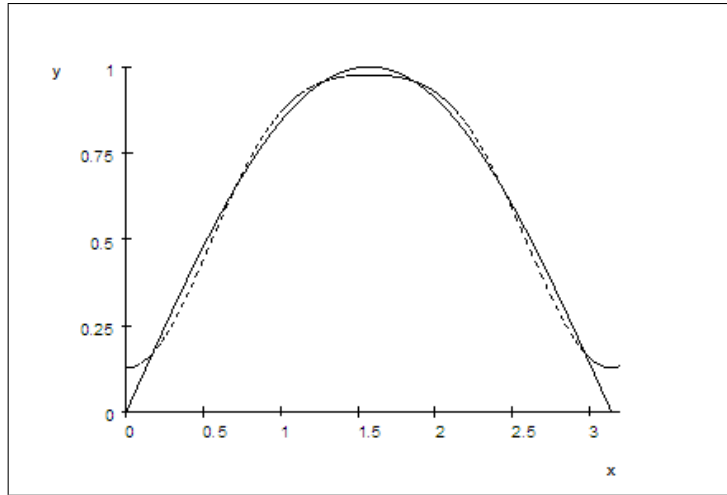
$$(f, g) := \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi} f(x) g(x) \, dx.$$

As an explicit example, let us consider the cos - series expansion of  $\sin x$  for  $0 < x < \pi$ . For this we have

$$\begin{aligned}
a_n &:= \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\pi \sin y \cos ny \, dy \\
&= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\pi (\sin((n+1)y) + \sin((1-n)y)) \, dy \\
&= -\frac{1}{\pi} \left( \frac{\cos((n+1)y)}{n+1} + \frac{\cos((1-n)y)}{1-n} \right) \Big|_0^\pi \\
&= 2 \cdot 1_{n\text{-even}} \frac{1}{\pi} \left( \frac{1}{1+n} + \frac{1}{1-n} \right) \\
&= \frac{4}{\pi} 1_{n\text{-even}} \frac{1}{1-n^2} = -\frac{4}{\pi} 1_{n\text{-even}} \frac{1}{n^2-1}.
\end{aligned}$$

So we conclude that

$$\begin{aligned}
\sin x &= \frac{2}{\pi} - \frac{4}{\pi} \sum_{n=2,4,6,\dots} \frac{1}{n^2-1} \cos nx \\
&= \frac{2}{\pi} - \frac{4}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{4n^2-1} \cos 2nx \\
&= \frac{2}{\pi} \left( 1 - \frac{2}{2^2-1} \cos 2x - \frac{2}{4^2-1} \cos 4x - \frac{2}{6^2-1} \cos 6x - \dots \right).
\end{aligned}$$



Plot of  $\sin x$  and the function

$$\frac{2}{\pi} \left( 1 - \frac{2}{2^2-1} \cos 2x - \frac{2}{4^2-1} \cos 4x \right)$$

which consists of the first 3 terms in the cosine expansion of  $\sin x$ .

### 5.4 Proof of Theorem 5.8

Before giving the proof of Theorem 5.8, we will need the following simple consequence of Bessel's inequality in Corollary 5.7.

**Lemma 5.16.** *Suppose  $f$  is a continuous function on  $[-\pi, \pi]$  or more generally any function such that  $\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} |f(x)|^2 dx < \infty$  and  $a_n$  and  $b_n$  are given as above, then*

$$\frac{1}{2}a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} [a_n^2 + b_n^2] \leq \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} |f(x)|^2 dx < \infty. \quad (5.13)$$

Moreover we also have

$$\lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(y) \sin \left( \left( N + \frac{1}{2} \right) y \right) dy = 0. \quad (5.14)$$

**Proof.** Since  $\left\{ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, \cos nx, \sin nx : n \in \mathbb{N} \right\}$  forms an orthonormal set, it follows from Corollary 5.7 that

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{1}{2}a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} [a_n^2 + b_n^2] \\ &= \left( f, \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \right)^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (f, \cos n(\cdot))^2 + (f, \sin n(\cdot))^2 \\ &\leq (f, f) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} |f(x)|^2 dx < \infty. \end{aligned}$$

In particular this implies that

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(y) \cos ny \, dy &= \pi \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n = 0 \text{ and} \\ \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(y) \sin ny \, dy &= \pi \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Since

$$\sin \left( \left( N + \frac{1}{2} \right) y \right) = \cos \left( \frac{1}{2} y \right) \sin(Ny) + \sin \left( \frac{1}{2} y \right) \cos(Ny),$$

Eq. (5.14) now follows from the previous limit formulas with  $f$  replaced by  $f(y) \cos \frac{1}{2}y$  and  $f(y) \sin \frac{1}{2}y$  respectively. ■

**Proof of the Fourier Convergence Theorem 5.8..** To concentrate on the basic ideas of the argument, I am only going to give the proof under the additional assumption that  $f$  is continuously differentiable. The full proof may be found in the book.

Let

$$f_N(x) = \frac{1}{2}a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^N [a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx]. \quad (5.15)$$

We begin by deriving a more tractable form for the function  $f_N(x)$ . To do this notice that

$$\begin{aligned} & a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \left( \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(y) \cos ny \, dy \right) \cos nx + \frac{1}{\pi} \left( \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(y) \sin ny \, dy \right) \sin nx \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(y) (\cos ny \cos nx + \sin ny \sin nx) \, dy \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(y) \cos n(x-y) \, dy \end{aligned}$$

wherein the last equality we have used Eq. (3.14) with  $t = nx$  and  $s = -ny$ . Using this observation in Eq. (5.15) shows

$$\begin{aligned} f_N(x) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(y) \, dy + \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^N \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(y) \cos n(x-y) \, dy \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(y) D_N(x-y) \, dy, \end{aligned} \quad (5.16)$$

where

$$D_N(\theta) = \frac{1}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^N \cos n\theta = \frac{\sin\left(\left(N + \frac{1}{2}\right)\theta\right)}{2 \sin\left(\frac{1}{2}\theta\right)}, \quad (5.17)$$

the second equality being Problem 14 of Section 32 of the book. (Also see Remark 5.18 below.)

To see what  $D_N(\theta)$  looks like, see Figure 5.9.

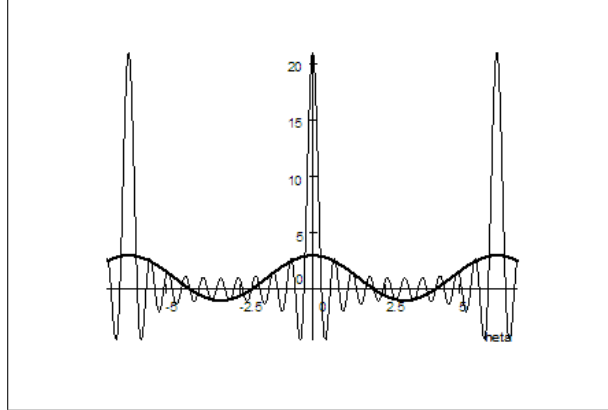
Making the change of variables,  $z = x - y$  in Eq. (5.16) and using the fact that  $f$  and  $D_N$  are  $2\pi$ -periodic, we have

$$\begin{aligned} f_N(x) &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(y) D_N(x-y) \, dy = -\frac{1}{\pi} \int_{x+\pi}^{x-\pi} f(x-z) D_N(z) \, dz \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\pi-x}^{\pi+x} f(x-z) D_N(z) \, dz = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\pi}^{\pi} f(x-z) D_N(z) \, dz. \end{aligned}$$

Also notice that it follows from Eq. (5.17) that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} D_N(y) \, dy &= (1, D_N) \\ &= \left( 1, \frac{1}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^N \cos n(\cdot) \right) = \frac{1}{2} (1, 1) = 1. \end{aligned}$$





**Fig. 5.9.** This is a plot  $D_1$  and  $D_{10}$ .

Hence we may write

$$\begin{aligned}
 f_N(x) - f(x) &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} [f(x-z) - f(x)] D_N(z) dz \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \frac{f(x-z) - f(x)}{2 \sin \frac{1}{2}z} \sin \left( \left( N + \frac{1}{2} \right) z \right) dz \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} g(z) \sin \left( \left( N + \frac{1}{2} \right) z \right) dz \quad (5.18)
 \end{aligned}$$

where

$$g(z) := \begin{cases} \frac{f(x-z) - f(x)}{2 \sin \frac{1}{2}z} & \text{if } z \neq 0 \\ -f'(z) & \text{if } z = 0. \end{cases}$$

Notice that, by l'Hopital's rule,  $g$  is continuous and hence

$$\frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} |g(z)|^2 dz < \infty$$

and so we may let  $N \rightarrow \infty$  in Eq. (5.18) with the aid of Lemma 5.16 to find

$$\lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} f_N(x) - f(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} g(z) \sin \left( \left( N + \frac{1}{2} \right) z \right) dz = 0.$$

■

The following strengthens the convergence of the sum in Eq. (5.7) when  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is piecewise  $C^1$ .

**Theorem 5.17 (Uniform Convergence of Fourier Series).** *If  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is piecewise  $C^1$  – the convergence in Eq. (5.7) is uniform. To be explicit, if we let  $f_N(x)$  be as in Eq. (5.15), i.e.*

$$f_N(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi} a_0 + \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^N [a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx],$$

then

$$\max_x |f(x) - f_N(x)| \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } N \rightarrow \infty. \quad (5.19)$$

**Proof.** We have

$$\begin{aligned} \max_x |f(x) - f_N(x)| &= \frac{1}{\pi} \max_x \left| \sum_{n=N+1}^{\infty} [a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx] \right| \\ &\leq \frac{1}{\pi} \max_x \sum_{n=N+1}^{\infty} |a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx| \\ &\leq \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{n=N+1}^{\infty} |a_n| + \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{n=N+1}^{\infty} |b_n|. \end{aligned} \quad (5.20)$$

By the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality,

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n| = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n |a_n| \cdot \frac{1}{n} \leq \sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (n |a_n|)^2} \cdot \left( \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2} \right). \quad (5.21)$$

Finally, by an integration by parts (where the boundary terms vanish using the  $2\pi$ -periodicity of the function  $f$ ) we find

$$\begin{aligned} na_n &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(y) n \cos ny \, dy = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(y) \frac{d}{dy} \cos ny \, dy \\ &= -\frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f'(y) \cos ny \, dy = -(f', \cos(n(\cdot))) \end{aligned}$$

Therefore by Bessel's inequality, with  $f$  replaced by  $f'$ , it follows that  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (n |a_n|)^2 < \infty$  and so by Eq. (5.21),  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n| < \infty$ . Similarly we may also show that  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |b_n| < \infty$  and hence it Eq. (5.19) follows from Eq. (5.20). ■

*Remark 5.18 (The Dirichlet kernel for those who know complex variables).* Recall Euler's formula which states,  $e^{i\theta} = \cos \theta + i \sin \theta$ . With this notation we have

$$\begin{aligned} D_N(\theta) &= \frac{1}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^N \cos n\theta \\ &= \frac{1}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^N \frac{1}{2} (e^{in\theta} - e^{-in\theta}) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=-N}^N e^{in\theta}. \end{aligned}$$

Letting  $\alpha = e^{i\theta/2}$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} 2D_N(\theta) &= \sum_{n=-N}^N \alpha^{2n} = \frac{\alpha^{2(N+1)} - \alpha^{-2N}}{\alpha^2 - 1} = \frac{\alpha^{2N+1} - \alpha^{-(2N+1)}}{\alpha - \alpha^{-1}} \\ &= \frac{2i \sin(N + \frac{1}{2})\theta}{2i \sin \frac{1}{2}\theta} = \frac{\sin(N + \frac{1}{2})\theta}{\sin \frac{1}{2}\theta}. \end{aligned}$$

and therefore

$$D_N(\theta) := \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=-N}^N e^{in\theta} = \frac{\sin(N + \frac{1}{2})\theta}{2 \sin \frac{1}{2}\theta}, \quad (5.22)$$

with the understanding that the right side of this equation is  $N + \frac{1}{2}$  whenever  $\theta \in 2\pi\mathbb{Z}$ .

#### 5.4.1 Gibb's Phenomenon

**Problem 38.7:** This problem deals with the Fourier expansion of the function

$$f(x) = \frac{\pi}{2} (1_{-\pi < x < 0} + 1_{0 < x < \pi}).$$

The expansion is given by

$$\begin{aligned} s_N(x) &= 2 \sum_{n=1}^N \frac{\sin((2n-1)x)}{2n-1} \\ &= 2 \left( \frac{\sin x}{1} + \frac{\sin 3x}{3} + \frac{\sin 5x}{5} + \frac{\sin 7x}{7} + \frac{\sin 9x}{9} + \frac{\sin 11x}{11} \dots \right) \end{aligned}$$

whose plots are The goal of this problem is to show how that convergence is not uniform which is referred to as Gibb's phenomenon in this setting.

(a) We have

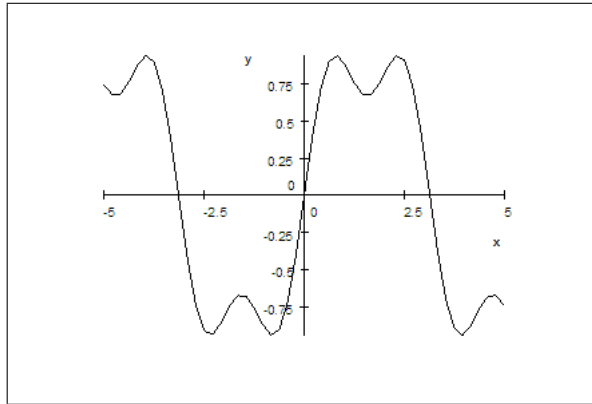
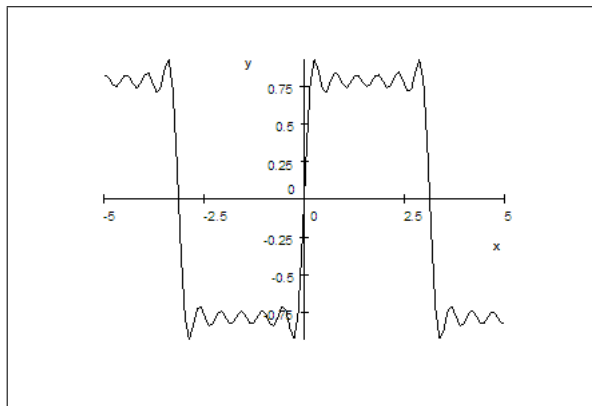
$$2 \sin x \cos((2n-1)x) = \sin 2nx - \sin((2n-2)x).$$

So summing both sides of the above equation on  $n$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} 2 \sin x \sum_{n=1}^N \cos((2n-1)x) &= \sum_{n=1}^N [\sin 2nx - \sin((2n-2)x)] \\ &= \sin 2x + \sin 4x + \dots + \sin((2N-2)x) + \sin 2Nx \\ &\quad - \sin 2x - \sin 4x - \dots - \sin((2N-2)x) \\ &= \sin 2Nx. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,

$$2 \sum_{n=1}^N \cos((2n-1)x) = \frac{\sin 2Nx}{\sin x} \quad (5.23)$$

Fig. 5.10. Plot of  $s_2$ .Fig. 5.11. A plot of  $S_6$ .

for  $x \neq k\pi$ ,  $k$  an integer. Since for  $0 < x < \pi$ ,

$$s_N(x) = 2 \sum_{n=1}^N \frac{\sin((2n-1)x)}{2n-1},$$

we may then write

$$s'_N(x) = 2 \sum_{n=1}^N \cos(2n-1)x = \frac{\sin 2Nx}{\sin x}.$$

(b) To find local extrema in  $0 < x < \pi$ , we of course must find the points in the interval at which  $s'_N(x) = 0$ . This occurs when  $\sin 2Nx = 0$ , at  $2Nx = 0, \pm\pi, \pm2\pi, \dots$ . So the extrema of  $s_N(x)$  on the interval  $0 < x < \pi$

occur when

$$x = \frac{\pi}{2N}, \frac{2\pi}{2N}, \frac{3\pi}{2N}, \dots, \frac{(2N-1)\pi}{2N}.$$

Thus the first extremum on the relevant interval occurs at  $x = \frac{\pi}{2N}$  and since

$$s_N''(x) = \frac{(\sin x)(2N \cos 2Nx) - (\sin 2Nx)(\cos x)}{\sin^2 x}$$

$$s_N''\left(\frac{\pi}{2N}\right) = \frac{2N \cos \pi}{\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2N}\right)} = -\frac{2N}{\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2N}\right)} < 0,$$

we know a relative maximum occurs at this point.

(c & d) Integrating Eq. (5.23) implies

$$\begin{aligned} s_N(\pi/(2N)) &= 2 \sum_{n=1}^N \frac{\sin((2n-1)\pi/(2N))}{2n-1} \\ &= 2 \sum_{n=1}^N \frac{\sin((2n-1)x)}{2n-1} \Big|_0^{\pi/(2N)} \\ &= 2 \sum_{n=1}^N \int_0^{\pi/(2N)} \cos((2n-1)x) dx \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/(2N)} \frac{\sin 2Nx}{\sin x} dx \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/(2N)} \frac{\sin 2Nx}{x} dx + \int_0^{\pi/(2N)} \frac{(x - \sin x)}{x \sin x} \sin 2Nx dx \\ &= \int_0^{\pi} \frac{\sin x}{x} dx + \int_0^{\pi/(2N)} \frac{(x - \sin x)}{x \sin x} \sin 2Nx dx \end{aligned} \quad (5.24)$$

wherein we have used

$$\frac{1}{\sin x} - \frac{1}{x} = \frac{(x - \sin x)}{x \sin x}.$$

Because

$$\left| \frac{(x - \sin x)}{x \sin x} \sin 2Nx \right| \leq \left| \frac{(x - \sin x)}{x \sin x} \right|$$

is bounded near 0, we may let  $N \rightarrow \infty$  in Eq. (5.24) to find,

$$\lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} s_N\left(\frac{\pi}{2N}\right) = \int_0^{\pi} \frac{\sin x}{x} dx =: \sigma \cong 1.8519.$$

## 5.5 Fourier Series on Other Intervals

Suppose  $f(x)$  is defined for  $-c < x < c$ . By setting  $F(y) := f\left(\frac{c}{\pi}y\right)$ , we get a function defined for  $-\pi < y < \pi$ . This function may be expanded into a Fourier series as

$$f\left(\frac{c}{\pi}y\right) = F(y) = \frac{1}{2}a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} [a_n \cos ny + b_n \sin ny]$$

where

$$a_n := \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f\left(\frac{c}{\pi}y\right) \cos ny \, dy \text{ and}$$

$$b_n := \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f\left(\frac{c}{\pi}y\right) \sin ny \, dy.$$

Making the change of variables,  $x = \frac{c}{\pi}y$  (or  $y = \frac{\pi}{c}x$ ) in the above equations gives

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{2}a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[ a_n \cos n\frac{\pi}{c}x + b_n \sin n\frac{\pi}{c}x \right]$$

where

$$a_n := \frac{1}{c} \int_{-c}^c f(x) \cos n\frac{\pi}{c}x \, dx$$

$$b_n := \frac{1}{c} \int_{-c}^c f(x) \sin n\frac{\pi}{c}x \, dx.$$

The convergence properties of these sum are the same as those for the Fourier series on  $(-c, c)$ . Similarly if  $f(x)$  is defined on  $0 < x < c$  then we have the sine and cosine series expansions

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin n\frac{\pi}{c}x \text{ for } 0 < x < c, \text{ and}$$

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{2}a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\frac{\pi}{c}x \text{ for } 0 < x < c,$$

where now

$$a_n := \frac{2}{c} \int_0^c f(x) \cos n\frac{\pi}{c}x \, dx$$

$$b_n := \frac{2}{c} \int_0^c f(x) \sin n\frac{\pi}{c}x \, dx.$$

*Example 5.19.* We have seen

$$y = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{n} (-1)^{n+1} \sin ny \text{ for } -\pi < y < \pi.$$

By letting  $y = \frac{\pi}{c}x$  in the above formula, we conclude that

$$\frac{\pi}{c}x = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{n} (-1)^{n+1} \sin n\frac{\pi}{c}x \text{ for } -c < x < c,$$

i.e.

$$x = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2c}{\pi n} (-1)^{n+1} \sin n \frac{\pi}{c} x \text{ for } -c < x < c.$$

Suppose that we want the cosine expansion of  $x$  on the interval,  $0 < x < c$ . In this case we will have

$$x = \frac{1}{2}a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n \frac{\pi}{c} x$$

with

$$\begin{aligned} a_n &= \frac{2}{c} \int_0^c x \cos n \frac{\pi}{c} x \, dx = \frac{2}{c} \int_0^c x \left( \frac{c}{\pi n} \right) \frac{d}{dx} \sin n \frac{\pi}{c} x \, dx \\ &= \frac{2}{c} x \left( \frac{c}{\pi n} \right) \sin n \frac{\pi}{c} x \Big|_0^c - \frac{2}{c} \left( \frac{c}{\pi n} \right) \int_0^c \sin n \frac{\pi}{c} x \, dx \\ &= \frac{2}{c} \left( \frac{c}{\pi n} \right)^2 \cos n \frac{\pi}{c} x \Big|_0^c = \frac{2}{c} \left( \frac{c}{\pi n} \right)^2 ((-1)^n - 1) \end{aligned}$$

for  $n \neq 0$  and

$$a_0 = \frac{2}{c} \int_0^c x \, dx = \frac{x^2}{c} \Big|_0^c = c$$

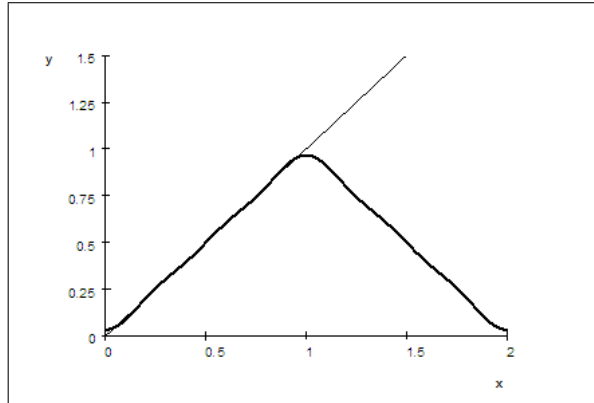
Thus we have

$$x = \frac{c}{2} - \frac{4c}{\pi^2} \sum_{n=1,3,5,\dots} \frac{1}{n^2} \cos n \frac{\pi}{c} x.$$

For example if  $c = 1$ , we have

$$x = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{4}{\pi^2} \left( \cos \pi x + \frac{1}{3^2} \cos 3\pi x + \frac{1}{5^2} \cos 5\pi x + \dots \right),$$

see Figure 5.19 below.



A plot of  $x$  and its Fourier cosine series approximation,  $\frac{1}{2} - \frac{4}{\pi^2} \left( \cos \pi x + \frac{1}{3^2} \cos 3\pi x + \frac{1}{5^2} \cos 5\pi x \right)$ .

This series is convergent for all  $0 \leq x \leq c$ . Taking  $x = 0$  in this expansion we may conclude that

$$0 = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{4}{\pi^2} \left( 1 + \frac{1}{3^2} + \frac{1}{5^2} + \dots \right)$$

or that

$$\left( 1 + \frac{1}{3^2} + \frac{1}{5^2} + \dots \right) = \frac{\pi^2}{8}$$

and taking  $x = 1$  in this expansion we find

$$1 = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{4}{\pi^2} \left( -1 - \frac{1}{3^2} \cos 3\pi x - \frac{1}{5^2} \cos 5\pi x + \dots \right)$$

which again gives

$$\left( 1 + \frac{1}{3^2} + \frac{1}{5^2} + \dots \right) = \frac{\pi^2}{8}.$$

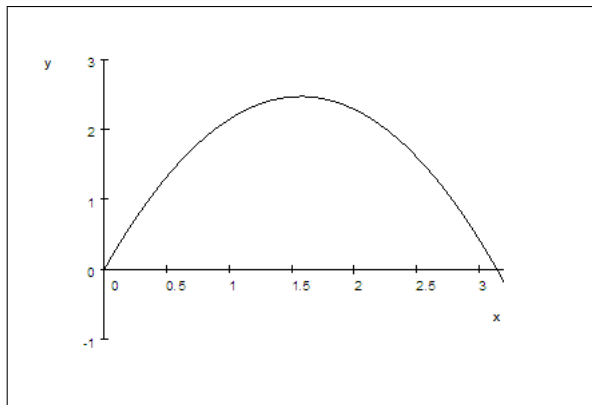


---

## Boundary value problem examples

We will begin in this chapter by solving three problems related to the operator  $L = \frac{d^2}{dx^2}$  on  $[0, \pi]$  with Neumann boundary conditions and the function

$$f(x) = x(\pi - x) = x\pi - x^2$$



Recall that the eigenfunctions/eigenvalues to this problem are

$$X_n(x) = \cos nx \text{ with } \lambda_n = -n^2$$

for  $n \in \mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\}$ . Also we have and we have

$$f(x) \sim \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n X_n(x)$$

where

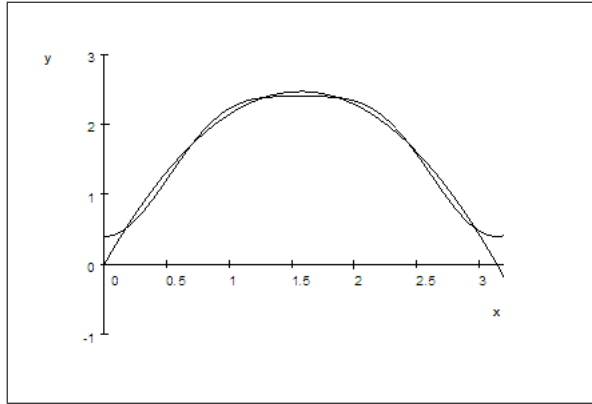
$$\begin{aligned}
a_n &= \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\pi f(x) X_n(x) dx = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\pi x(\pi-x) \cos nx dx \\
&= -\frac{2}{\pi n^2} \int_0^\pi x(\pi-x) \frac{d^2}{dx^2} \cos nx dx \\
&= -\frac{2}{\pi n^2} \left[ \left( x(\pi-x) \frac{d}{dx} \cos nx \right) \Big|_0^\pi - \int_0^\pi (\pi-2x) \frac{d}{dx} \cos nx dx \right] \\
&= \frac{2}{\pi n^2} \left[ \int_0^\pi (\pi-2x) \frac{d}{dx} \cos nx dx \right] \\
&= \frac{2}{\pi n^2} \left[ [(\pi-2x) \cos nx] \Big|_0^\pi - \int_0^\pi (-2) \cos nx dx \right] \\
&= \frac{2}{\pi n^2} \left[ [(\pi-2x) \cos nx] \Big|_0^\pi + 2 \frac{\sin nx}{n} \Big|_0^\pi \right] \\
&= -\pi \frac{2}{\pi n^2} [(-1)^n + 1] = -\frac{2}{n^2} [(-1)^n + 1]
\end{aligned}$$

and

$$a_0 = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\pi x(\pi-x) dx = \frac{1}{3} \pi^2.$$

Therefore we have

$$\begin{aligned}
x(\pi-x) &= \frac{\pi^2}{6} - 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2} [(-1)^n + 1] \cos nx \\
&= \frac{\pi^2}{6} - 4 \left( \frac{1}{2^2} \cos 2x + \frac{1}{4^2} \cos 4x + \dots \right)
\end{aligned}$$



Plot of  $\frac{\pi^2}{6} - 4 \left( \frac{1}{2^2} \cos 2x + \frac{1}{4^2} \cos 4x \right)$  which is approximating  $x(\pi-x)$ .

*Example 6.1.*

$$\begin{aligned}
u_{tt} &= u_{xx} \text{ with } u_x(t,0) = 0 = u_x(t,\pi) \text{ and} \\
u(0,x) &= 0 \text{ and } u_t(0,x) = x\pi - x^2.
\end{aligned}$$

The answer is given by

$$\begin{aligned}
 u(t, x) &= \frac{\sin \sqrt{-L}t}{\sqrt{-L}} f(x) = \frac{\sin \sqrt{-L}t}{\sqrt{-L}} \left( \frac{a_0}{2} X_0(x) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n X_n(x) \right) \\
 &= \left( \frac{a_0}{2} t + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n X_n(x) \frac{\sin nt}{n} \right) \\
 &= \frac{\pi^2}{6} t - 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^3} [(-1)^n + 1] \cos nx \sin nt \\
 &= \frac{\pi^2}{6} t - 4 \left( \frac{1}{2^3} \cos 2x \sin 2t + \frac{1}{4^3} \cos 4x \sin 4t + \dots \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

*Example 6.2.*

$$\begin{aligned}
 u_t &= u_{xx} \text{ with} \\
 u_x(t, 0) &= 0 = u_x(t, \pi) \text{ and} \\
 u(0, x) &= x\pi - x^2.
 \end{aligned}$$

Answer is given by

$$\begin{aligned}
 u(t, x) &= e^{tL} f(x) = e^{tL} \left( \frac{a_0}{2} X_0(x) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n X_n(x) \right) \\
 &= \left( \frac{a_0}{2} e^{tL} X_0(x) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n e^{tL} X_n(x) \right) \\
 &= \left( \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n e^{-tn^2} X_n(x) \right) \\
 &= \frac{\pi^2}{6} - 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^3} [(-1)^n + 1] e^{-tn^2} \cos nx \\
 &= \frac{\pi^2}{6} - 4 \left( \frac{1}{2^2} e^{-t2^2} \cos 2x + \frac{1}{4^2} e^{-t4^2} \cos 4x + \dots \right) \rightarrow \frac{\pi^2}{6}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Notice that

$$\int_0^{\pi} x(\pi - x) dx = \frac{1}{6} \pi^3$$

because heat is conserved with Neumann boundary conditions.

*Example 6.3.* Here we take  $0 < x < \pi$  and  $0 < y < 3$  and we wish to solve

$$\begin{aligned}
 u_{xx} + u_{yy} &= 0, \\
 u_x(0, y) &= 0 = u_x(\pi, y), \\
 u(x, 3) &= 0 \text{ and } u(x, 0) = x(\pi - x).
 \end{aligned}$$

In this case we use the separation of variables mantra and look for  $Y(y)$  such that  $Y(3) = 0$  and so that  $u_n(x, y) = X_n(x)Y(y)$  solves Laplace's equation. To do this we have

$$0 = \Delta u_n = -n^2 X_n(x) Y(y) + X_n(x) Y''(y)$$

from which we must demand that

$$Y''(y) - n^2 Y(y) = 0$$

so that

$$Y(y) = Ae^{ny} + Be^{-ny}$$

and then requiring

$$0 = Y(3) = Ae^{3n} + Be^{-3n}$$

shows that

$$B = -Ae^{6n}$$

and thus that

$$Y(y) = Ae^{ny} - Ae^{6n}e^{-ny}.$$

Taking  $A = -\frac{1}{2}e^{-3n}$  gives

$$Y(y) = \sinh n(3 - y).$$

For  $n = 0$  we have  $Y''(y) = 0$ , so that  $Y(y) = Ay + B$  and to match the boundary condition we should take  $Y(y) = 3 - y$ . Thus we look for a solution of the form

$$u(x, y) = \frac{a_0}{2}(3 - y) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos nx \sinh n(3 - y)$$

with

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \frac{\pi^2}{6} - 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2} [(-1)^n + 1] \cos nx \\ &= u(x, 0) = \frac{a_0}{2} 3 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos nx \sinh n3 \end{aligned}$$

and so

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{a_0}{2} 3 &= \frac{\pi^2}{6} \text{ or } a_0 = \frac{\pi^2}{9} \text{ and} \\ a_n \sinh n3 &= -2 \frac{1}{n^2} [(-1)^n + 1] \text{ or } a_n = -2 \frac{1}{n^2 \sinh n3} [(-1)^n + 1]. \end{aligned}$$

Thus the solution is given by

$$u(x, y) = \frac{\pi^2}{18}(3 - y) - 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2} [(-1)^n + 1] \cos nx \frac{\sinh n(3 - y)}{\sinh 3n}.$$

*Example 6.4.* Suppose now  $0 \leq x \leq \pi$  and  $0 \leq y \leq 1$  and we wish to solve Laplace's equation,

$$\Delta u(x, y) := u_{xx}(x, y) + u_{yy}(x, y) = 0 \text{ with} \quad (6.1)$$

$$u(0, y) = u(\pi, y) = 0, \quad u(x, 1) = 0 \quad (6.2)$$

$$\text{and } u(x, 0) = f(x). \quad (6.3)$$

**Solution:** By separation of variable, one finds the functions

$$u_n(x, y) = \sin nx \cdot \sinh n(1 - y)$$

solve Eqs. (6.1) and (6.2) for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . By the superposition principle,

$$u(x, y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n u_n(x, y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin nx \cdot \sinh n(1 - y) \quad (6.4)$$

will also solve Eqs. (6.1) and (6.2). Finally we wish to chose the  $b_n$  so that

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin nx \cdot \sinh n(1 - y)|_{y=0} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin nx \cdot \sinh n.$$

But from the theory of the Fourier sine series, we know that

$$b_n \sinh n = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi} f(x) \sin nxdx$$

and therefore we must choose

$$b_n = \frac{2}{\pi \sinh n} \int_0^{\pi} f(y) \sin nydy.$$

We thus find the solution to our problem is

$$u(x, y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{2}{\pi \sinh n} \int_0^{\pi} f(y) \sin nydy \right) \sin nx \cdot \sinh n(1 - y).$$

For example if  $f(x) = \sin 2x - \sin 5x$ , then we want

$$\sin 2x - \pi \sin 5x = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin nx \cdot \sinh n$$

and hence that  $b_2 \sinh 2 = 1$  and  $b_5 \sinh 5 = -\pi$  with all of the other  $b_n = 0$ . Thus we find

$$u(x, y) = \frac{1}{\sinh 2} \sin 2x \cdot \sinh 2(1 - y) - \frac{\pi}{\sinh 5} \sin 5x \cdot \sinh 5(1 - y).$$

*Example 6.5 (Example 39.2 on p. 122).* Here we wish to solve,

$$u_t = ku_{xx} \text{ with } u(t, 0) = 0, \quad u(t, \pi) = u_0 \text{ and } u(x, 0) = 0.$$

Notice that the boundary condition is not homogeneous. To take care of this we begin by finding the equilibrium solution,  $\Phi(x)$  to the problem. Namely,  $\Phi''(x) = 0$  with  $\Phi(0) = 0$  and  $\Phi(\pi) = u_0$ . The answer is of course,  $\Phi(x) = \frac{x}{\pi}u_0$ .

We now write

$$u(t, x) = U(t, x) + \Phi(x)$$

and notice that

$$\dot{U}(t, x) = \dot{u}(t, x) = ku_{xx} = k(U_{xx}(t, x) + \Phi''(x)) = kU_{xx}(t, x)$$

and  $U$  now has the boundary conditions,

$$U(t, 0) = 0, \quad U(t, \pi) = 0 \text{ and } U(x, 0) = -\Phi(x) = -\frac{x}{\pi}u_0.$$

Hence the solution to our problem now is

$$U(t, x) = -e^{ktL}\Phi(x) = -\frac{u_0}{\pi}e^{ktL}x.$$

Recalling that

$$x = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{n} (-1)^{n+1} \sin nx = 2 \left( \frac{1}{1} \sin x - \frac{1}{2} \sin 2x + \frac{1}{3} \sin 3x - \frac{1}{4} \sin 4x + \dots \right)$$

it now follows that

$$\begin{aligned} U(t, x) &= -e^{ktL}\Phi(x) = -\frac{u_0}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{n} (-1)^{n+1} e^{ktL} \sin nx \\ &= -\frac{u_0}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{n} (-1)^{n+1} e^{-ktn^2} \sin nx \end{aligned}$$

and the full solution is given by

$$\begin{aligned} u(t, x) &= \frac{x}{\pi}u_0 - \frac{u_0}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{n} (-1)^{n+1} e^{-ktn^2} \sin nx \\ &= \frac{u_0}{\pi} \left[ x + 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n} e^{-ktn^2} \sin nx \right]. \end{aligned}$$

---

## Boundary value generalities

### 7.1 Linear Algebra of the Sturm-Liouville Eigenvalue Problem

Suppose  $L$  is a differential operator on functions on  $\Omega = [a, b]$  of the form

$$Lf(x) := \frac{1}{p(x)} \frac{d}{dx} \left( \kappa(x) \frac{d}{dx} f(x) \right) + \frac{1}{p(x)} q(x) f(x). \quad (7.1)$$

Define the **inner product**,

$$(f, g) := \int_{\Omega=[a,b]} f(x) g(x) p(x) dx,$$

for functions  $f, g : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . With this notation we find

$$\begin{aligned} (Lf, g) &= \int_{\Omega} \left[ \frac{d}{dx} \left( \kappa(x) \frac{d}{dx} f(x) \right) + q(x) f(x) \right] \cdot g(x) dx \\ &= \int_{\Omega} \left[ -\kappa(x) \frac{d}{dx} f(x) \cdot \frac{d}{dx} g(x) + q(x) f(x) g(x) \right] dx + \kappa(x) f'(x) g(x) \Big|_a^b \\ &= \int_{\Omega} f(x) \cdot \left[ \frac{d}{dx} \left( \kappa(x) \frac{d}{dx} g(x) \right) + q(x) g(x) \right] dx \\ &\quad + [\kappa(x) (f'(x) g(x) - f(x) g'(x))] \Big|_a^b. \end{aligned} \quad (7.2)$$

Hence we see that

$$(Lf, g) - (f, Lg) = [\kappa(x) (f'(x) g(x) - f(x) g'(x))] \Big|_a^b. \quad (7.3)$$

Let  $(a_1, a_2)$  and  $(b_1, b_2)$  be two non-zero vectors in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  and define

$$\begin{aligned} Bf(a) &= a_1 f(a) + a_2 f'(a) \quad \text{and} \\ Bf(b) &= b_1 f(b) + b_2 f'(b). \end{aligned}$$

In the sequel we will be interested on imposing the **boundary conditions** on  $Bf(a) = 0 = Bf(b)$ . If we assume that  $f$  and  $g$  satisfy these boundary conditions in Eq. (7.3) then it follows that  $(f(a), f'(a))$  and  $(g(a), g'(a))$  line on the same line and therefore

$$W(f, g)(a) := f'(a)g(a) - f(a)g'(a) = \det \begin{bmatrix} g(a) & g'(a) \\ f(a) & f'(a) \end{bmatrix} = 0.$$

( $W(f, g)$  is called the **Wronskian of  $f$  and  $g$** .) Similar reasoning shows

$$f'(b)g(b) - f(b)g'(b) = \det \begin{bmatrix} g(b) & g'(b) \\ f(b) & f'(b) \end{bmatrix} = 0$$

and therefore it follows from Eq. (7.3) that  $L$  satisfies the symmetry condition,

$$(Lf, g) = (f, Lg) \text{ if } Bf = 0 = Bg \text{ on } \partial\Omega = \{a, b\}.$$

It also worth noting that if  $\kappa(a) = \kappa(b)$  and  $f$  and  $g$  satisfy **periodic boundary conditions; i.e.**

$$f(a) = f(b) \text{ and } f'(a) = f'(b) \quad (7.4)$$

then we still have

$$(Lf, g) = (f, Lg).$$

As we will see we are going to be interested in the following eigenvalue problem, namely we will be interested in finding solutions to the eigenfunction equation,

$$Lf = -\lambda f \text{ with } Bf = 0 \text{ on } \partial\Omega.$$

This may be rewritten as

$$\frac{d}{dx} \left[ \kappa(x) \frac{d}{dx} f(x) \right] + [q(x) + \lambda p(x)] f(x) = 0 \text{ with } Bf = 0 \text{ on } \partial\Omega.$$

This is the general form of the **Sturm-Liouville eigenvalue problem** as in Chapter 6 of the book. There  $\kappa(x) = r(x)$ .

Let  $D_B$  denote those functions  $f : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  with are twice continuously differentiable and satisfy the boundary conditions,  $Bf = 0$  on  $\partial\Omega$  and if  $\kappa(a) = \kappa(b)$  let  $D_{per}$  denote those functions  $f : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  with are twice continuously differentiable and satisfy periodic boundary conditions in Eq. (7.4).

The next result is the formal analogue of Corollary 1.4.

**Proposition 7.1.** *If  $f, g \in D_B$  or  $\kappa(a) = \kappa(b)$  and  $f, g \in D_{per}$  such that  $Lf = -\lambda f$  and  $Lg = -\mu g$  with  $\mu \neq \lambda$ , then  $(f, g) = 0$ .*

**Proof.** The same proof as that given for Corollary 1.4 work here without change. ■

The next theorem is an analogue of the spectral theorem for the operator  $L$ .



**Theorem 7.2 (Sturm-Liouville Spectral Theorem).** *Let  $L$  be as above, assume  $\kappa > 0$  on  $[a, b]$  and let  $D = D_B$  or  $D = D_{per}$  (in which case we assume additionally that  $\kappa(b) = \kappa(a)$ ), then there exists  $u_n \in D$  and  $\lambda_n \in \mathbb{R}$  such that:*

1.  $-Lu_n = \lambda_n u_n$  for all  $n$ ,
2. the eigenvalues are increasing, i.e.

$$\lambda_1 \leq \lambda_2 \leq \lambda_3 \leq \dots,$$

3.  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \lambda_n = \infty$  (in fact  $\#\{n : \lambda_n \leq a\} \sim a^{1/2}$  or equivalently  $\lambda_n \sim n^2$ ).
4. Every “nice” function  $f$  on  $[a, b]$  may be expanded as

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (f, u_n) u_n(x) \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[ \int_a^b f(x) u_n(x) p(x) dx \right] u_n(x). \end{aligned}$$

*Example 7.3 (Problem 53.2 on p. 173).* Consider the eigenfunction problem,

$$X'' + \lambda X = 0 \text{ with } X(0) = 0 \text{ and } hX(1) + X'(1) = 0$$

with  $h > 0$ . Notice again that

$$\begin{aligned} -\lambda(X, X) &= (X'', X) = \int_0^1 X''(x) X(x) dx \\ &= - \int_0^1 X'(x) X'(x) dx + X'(x) X(x) \Big|_0^1 \\ &= -(X', X') - hX(1)^2 \end{aligned} \tag{7.5}$$

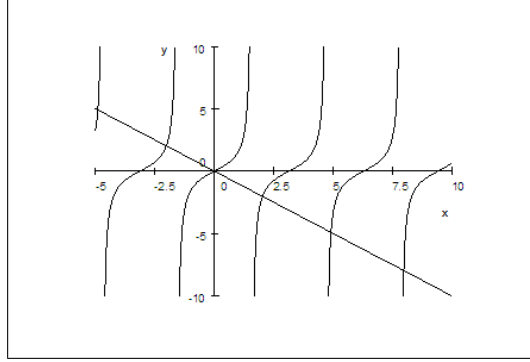
from which it follows that  $\lambda \geq 0$ . Moreover if  $\lambda = 0$ , then  $X' = 0$  and hence  $X'$  is constant. But since  $hX(1) + X'(1) = 0$  it follows that  $X = 0$ , hence we must have  $\lambda > 0$ . Therefore,  $X(x) = \sin \alpha x$  for some  $\alpha$ . Implementing the last boundary condition then gives,

$$h \sin \alpha + \alpha \cos \alpha = 0$$

or equivalently that

$$\tan \alpha = -\alpha/h.$$

Let  $\alpha_n$  denote the solutions to this equation, see Figure 7.3 below.



The  $x$  - coordinates of the points of intersection of the line with the curves gives the values of  $\alpha$  when  $h = 1$ .

So we have

$$X_n(x) = C_n \sin \alpha_n x \text{ where } \tan \alpha_n = -\alpha_n/h \text{ with } \alpha_n > 0 \text{ and } \lambda_n = \alpha_n^2.$$

Let us now choose  $C_n$  so that  $(X_n, X_n) = 1$ . To this end we have

$$(X_n, X_n) = C_n^2 \int_0^1 [\sin \alpha_n x]^2 dx.$$

Now recall that  $\cos 2\theta = 1 - 2 \sin^2 \theta$ , and therefore,

$$\sin^2 \theta = \frac{1 - \cos 2\theta}{2}.$$

Using this above gives

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^1 [\sin \alpha_n x]^2 dx &= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^1 (1 - \cos 2\alpha_n x) dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 - \frac{\sin 2\alpha_n x}{2\alpha_n} \Big|_0^1 \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 - \frac{\sin 2\alpha_n}{2\alpha_n} \right) = \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 - \frac{\sin \alpha_n \cos \alpha_n}{\alpha_n} \right). \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\tan \alpha_n = -\alpha_n/h$ , we have

$$\sin \alpha_n = -\frac{\alpha_n}{h} \cos \alpha_n \tag{7.6}$$

and therefore,

$$\int_0^1 [\sin \alpha_n x]^2 dx = \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \frac{\cos^2 \alpha_n}{h} \right) = \frac{1}{2h} (h + \cos^2 \alpha_n).$$

So we need to choose  $C_n$  so that

$$C_n^2 \frac{h + \cos^2 \alpha_n}{2h} = 1,$$

i.e.

$$C_n = \sqrt{\frac{2h}{h + \cos^2 \alpha_n}}$$

and hence the final answer is given by

$$X_n(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2h}{h + \cos^2 \alpha_n}} \sin \alpha_n x \text{ where } \tan \alpha_n = -\alpha_n/h.$$

Here  $\alpha_n > 0$  and  $\lambda_n = \alpha_n^2$ .

**Alternative way to compute**  $\int_0^1 [\sin \alpha_n x]^2 dx$ . From Eq. (7.5),

$$-\alpha_n^2 \int_0^1 [\sin \alpha_n x]^2 dx = - \int_0^1 [\alpha_n \cos \alpha_n x]^2 dx - h \sin^2 \alpha_n$$

and therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^1 [\sin \alpha_n x]^2 dx &= \int_0^1 [\cos \alpha_n x]^2 dx + \frac{h}{\alpha_n^2} \sin^2 \alpha_n \\ &= \int_0^1 [1 - \sin^2 \alpha_n x] dx + \frac{h}{\alpha_n^2} \sin^2 \alpha_n. \end{aligned}$$

From this equation and Eq. (7.6) it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} 2 \int_0^1 [\sin \alpha_n x]^2 dx &= 1 + \frac{h}{\alpha_n^2} \sin^2 \alpha_n = 1 + \frac{h}{\alpha_n^2} \left( -\frac{\alpha_n}{h} \cos \alpha_n \right)^2 \\ &= 1 + \frac{\cos^2 \alpha_n}{h} = \frac{h + \cos^2 \alpha_n}{h} \end{aligned}$$

and therefore that

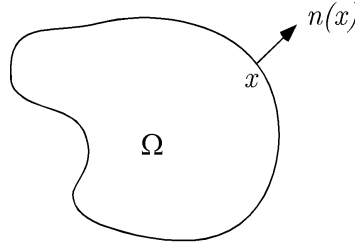
$$\int_0^1 [\sin \alpha_n x]^2 dx = \frac{h + \cos^2 \alpha_n}{2h}$$

as before.

## 7.2 General Elliptic PDE Theory

In this section we will state the generalization of theorem 7.2 to higher dimensional situations. Let  $\Omega$  be a “nice” open bounded region in  $\mathbb{R}^d$  (typically we have in mind  $d = 1, 2, 3$  here). Suppose that  $\kappa_{i,j}(x)$  and  $p(x)$  be smooth functions on  $\Omega$  such that matrix  $\kappa(x)$

$$\kappa(x) := \begin{bmatrix} \kappa_{11}(x) & \kappa_{12}(x) & \dots & \kappa_{1d}(x) \\ \kappa_{21}(x) & \kappa_{22}(x) & \dots & \kappa_{2d}(x) \\ \vdots & & \ddots & \vdots \\ \kappa_{d1}(x) & \kappa_{d2}(x) & \dots & \kappa_{dd}(x) \end{bmatrix}$$



**Fig. 7.1.** A region representing some material of some region in space.

is positive definite, i.e.  $\kappa^{\text{tr}} = \kappa$  and  $\kappa v \cdot v > 0$  for all  $v \in \mathbb{R}^d$ . We now form the inner product

$$(u, v) := \int_{\Omega} u(x) v(x) p(x) dV$$

for function  $u, v$  on  $\Omega$  and let

$$Lu := \sum_{i,j=1}^d \frac{1}{p} \partial_i (\kappa_{ij} \partial_j u) + \gamma u. \quad (7.7)$$

*Example 7.4.* Look at the formula for the Laplacian in polar, cylindrical, and spherical coordinates to find natural operators written in this form. (There are some singularities involved here which are artifices of these coordinates system. We will have to deal with them later.) The general form of the heat equation also produced such operators  $L$  as in Eq. (7.7) above.

By the divergence Theorem 1.9,

$$\begin{aligned} (Lu, v) &= \int_{\Omega} \left[ \sum_{i,j=1}^d \frac{1}{p} \partial_i (\kappa_{ij} \partial_j u) + \gamma u \right] v p dV \\ &= \int_{\Omega} \left[ \sum_{i,j=1}^d \partial_i (\kappa_{ij} \partial_j u) \cdot v + \gamma u v p \right] dV \\ &= \int_{\Omega} \left[ - \sum_{i,j=1}^d \kappa_{ij} \partial_j u \partial_i v + \gamma u v p \right] dV + \int_{\partial\Omega} \sum_{i,j=1}^d (\kappa_{ij} \partial_j u) n_i v d\sigma \\ &= \int_{\Omega} [-\kappa \nabla u \cdot \nabla v + \gamma u v] p \cdot dV + \int_{\partial\Omega} (\kappa \nabla u \cdot n) v d\sigma \end{aligned}$$

where  $n(x)$  is the outward pointing normal and  $d\sigma$  is the surface measure on  $\partial\Omega$ . By interchanging the roles of  $u$  and  $v$  in the above formula, it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} (u, Lv) &= - \int_{\Omega} [\nabla u \cdot \kappa \nabla v + \gamma uv] dV + \int_{\partial\Omega} (\kappa \nabla v \cdot n) u d\sigma \\ &= - \int_{\Omega} [\kappa \nabla u \cdot \nabla v + \gamma uv] dV + \int_{\partial\Omega} (\kappa \nabla v \cdot n) u d\sigma \end{aligned}$$

and therefore,

$$(Lu, v) - (u, Lv) = \int_{\partial\Omega} [(\kappa \nabla u \cdot n) v - (\kappa \nabla v \cdot n) u] d\sigma. \tag{7.8}$$

Let us now further suppose  $\lambda$  is a given function on  $\partial\Omega$  and  $u$  and  $v$  satisfy the boundary conditions,

$$Bu(x) := \kappa(x) \nabla u(x) \cdot n(x) + \alpha(x) u(x) \stackrel{\text{set}}{=} 0$$

where we allow for  $\alpha(x) = \infty$  by which we mean  $u(x) = 0$  at such points. Then using these boundary condition in Eq. (7.8) shows that

$$[(\kappa \nabla u \cdot n) v - (\kappa \nabla v \cdot n) u] = \alpha v u - \alpha u v = 0 \text{ on } \partial\Omega$$

and hence we have

$$(Lu, v) = (u, Lv) \text{ whenever } Bu = Bv = 0.$$

The following is an analogue of the spectral theorem for matrices in this context.

**Theorem 7.5.** *Keeping the above set up, there exists an orthonormal set  $\{u_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  of eigenvectors for  $(-L, B)$ , i.e.  $Bu_n = 0$  on  $\partial\Omega$  and  $-Lu_n = \lambda_n u_n$ . Moreover these may be chosen so that:*

1. the eigenvalues are increasing, i.e.

$$\lambda_1 \leq \lambda_2 \leq \lambda_3 \leq \dots,$$

2.  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \lambda_n = \infty$  (in fact  $\#\{n : \lambda_n \leq a\} \sim a^{d/2}$  or equivalently  $\lambda_n \sim n^{2/d}$ ).

3. Every “nice” function  $f$  on  $\Omega$  may be expanded as

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (f, u_n) u_n(x) \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[ \int_{\Omega} f(x) u_n(x) p(x) dV \right] u_n(x). \end{aligned}$$

*Example 7.6.* Let us find the eigenfunctions  $u : \Omega = [0, a] \times [0, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\Delta u = \lambda u \text{ and } u = 0 \text{ on } \partial\Omega.$$

As usual, let us try to find solutions of the form

$$u(x, y) = X(x)Y(y).$$

In order for this to work we must have

$$\lambda = \frac{u}{u} = \frac{\Delta u}{u} = \frac{X''(x)}{X(x)} + \frac{Y''(y)}{Y(y)}$$

and therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{X''(x)}{X(x)} = k \text{ and } \frac{Y''(y)}{Y(y)} = \lambda - k \text{ with} \\ X(0) = 0 = X(a) \text{ and } Y(0) = 0 = Y(b) \end{aligned}$$

for some constant  $k$ . The solutions to these one-dimensional Sturm-Liouville problems are already known, namely we must have

$$X(x) = \sin m \frac{\pi}{a} x \text{ and } Y(y) = \sin n \frac{\pi}{b} y$$

for some integers  $m, n$ . The functions,

$$u_{m,n}(x, y) := \sin m \frac{\pi}{a} x \sin n \frac{\pi}{b} y$$

satisfy

$$\Delta u_{m,n} = \lambda_{m,n} u_{m,n} \text{ with } u_{m,n} = 0 \text{ on } \partial\Omega$$

where

$$\lambda_{m,n} := -\pi^2 \left[ \left( \frac{m}{a} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{n}{b} \right)^2 \right].$$

All of these functions are orthogonal and in fact normalized if we define

$$(f, g) := \frac{2}{a} \cdot \frac{2}{b} \int_0^a dx \int_0^b dy f(x, y) g(x, y)$$

and we may expand  $f$  as

$$f = \sum_{m,n=1}^{\infty} B_{m,n} u_{m,n}$$

where

$$B_{m,n} = (f, u_{m,n}) = \frac{2}{a} \cdot \frac{2}{b} \int_0^a dx \int_0^b dy f(x, y) u_{m,n}(x, y).$$

To see this is correct, notice that

$$f(x, y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{2}{b} \int_0^b f(x, \tilde{y}) \sin n \frac{\pi}{b} \tilde{y} d\tilde{y} \right) \sin n \frac{\pi}{b} y \quad (7.9)$$

and

$$f(x, \tilde{y}) = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{2}{a} \int_0^a f(\tilde{x}, \tilde{y}) \sin m \frac{\pi}{a} \tilde{x} d\tilde{x} \right) \sin m \frac{\pi}{a} x. \quad (7.10)$$

Formally inserting Eq. (7.10) into Eq. 7.9) shows

$$\begin{aligned} f(x, y) &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{2}{b} \int_0^b d\tilde{y} \left[ \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{2}{a} \int_0^a f(\tilde{x}, \tilde{y}) \sin m \frac{\pi}{a} \tilde{x} d\tilde{x} \right) \sin m \frac{\pi}{a} x \right] \sin n \frac{\pi}{b} \tilde{y} \right) \sin n \frac{\pi}{b} y \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{2}{b} \int_0^b d\tilde{y} \frac{2}{a} \int_0^a d\tilde{x} f(\tilde{x}, \tilde{y}) \sin m \frac{\pi}{a} \tilde{x} \sin n \frac{\pi}{b} \tilde{y} \right) \sin m \frac{\pi}{a} x \sin n \frac{\pi}{b} y \\ &= \sum_{m,n=1}^{\infty} B_{m,n} u_{m,n}(x, y). \end{aligned}$$

It also interesting to observe that if  $\Delta u = \lambda u$  with  $u = 0$  on  $\partial\Omega$  and we let

$$v_m(y) := \frac{2}{a} \int_0^a u(x, y) \sin m \frac{\pi}{a} x dx,$$

then

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda v_m(y) &= \lambda \frac{2}{a} \int_0^a u(x, y) \sin m \frac{\pi}{a} x dx = \frac{2}{a} \int_0^a \Delta u(x, y) \sin m \frac{\pi}{a} x dx \\ &= \frac{2}{a} \int_0^a \partial_x^2 u(x, y) \sin m \frac{\pi}{a} x dx + \frac{2}{a} \int_0^a \partial_y^2 u(x, y) \sin m \frac{\pi}{a} x dx \\ &= - \left( m \frac{\pi}{a} \right)^2 \frac{2}{a} \int_0^a u(x, y) \sin m \frac{\pi}{a} x dx + \frac{2}{a} \partial_y^2 \int_0^a u(x, y) \sin m \frac{\pi}{a} x dx \\ &= - \left( m \frac{\pi}{a} \right)^2 v_m(y) + \partial_y^2 v_m(y) \end{aligned}$$

and hence

$$\partial_y^2 v_m(y) = \left[ \lambda + \left( m \frac{\pi}{a} \right)^2 \right] v_m(y) \text{ with } v_m(0) = v_m(b) = 0.$$

Since  $v_m(y)$  is an eigenfunction of  $\partial_y^2$  with Dirichlet boundary conditions, we must have  $v_m(y) = C_m \sin n_m \frac{\pi}{b} y$  for some constant  $C_m$  and some integer  $n_m$  such that

$$\lambda + \pi^2 \left( \frac{m}{a} \right)^2 = -\pi^2 \left( \frac{n_m}{b} \right)^2,$$

i.e. we must have

$$\lambda = -\pi^2 \left[ \left( \frac{m}{a} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{n_m}{b} \right)^2 \right].$$

From all of this it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} u(x, y) &= \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} v_m(y) \sin m \frac{\pi}{a} x \\ &= \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} C_m \sin n_m \frac{\pi}{b} y \sin m \frac{\pi}{a} x, \end{aligned}$$

with only a finite number of non-zero terms in the above sum. This shows that the functions  $\{u_{m,n} : m, n \in \mathbb{N}\}$  forms a basis for all of the eigenfunctions of  $\Delta$  with Dirichlet boundary conditions on  $\Omega$ .



---

## PDE Applications and Duhamel's Principle

### 8.1 Interpretation of d'Alembert's solution to the 1-d wave equation

*Example 8.1.* We may use d'Alembert's solution to the wave equation to formally work out the meaning of  $\cos\left(t\sqrt{-a^2\partial_x^2}\right)$  and  $\frac{\sin\left(t\sqrt{-a^2\partial_x^2}\right)}{\sqrt{-a^2\partial_x^2}}$ . To see what we should get, let  $A^2 = -a^2\partial_x^2$  and  $A = \sqrt{-a^2\partial_x^2}$  then

$$y(t, x) = \cos\left(t\sqrt{-a^2\partial_x^2}\right) f(x) + \frac{\sin\left(t\sqrt{-a^2\partial_x^2}\right)}{\sqrt{-a^2\partial_x^2}} g(x) \text{ for } -\infty < x < \infty$$

should solve Eqs. (2.5) and (2.6). By comparing this with Eq. (2.7), d'Alembert's solution which I recall here,

$$y(t, x) = \frac{1}{2} [f(x+at) + f(x-at)] + \frac{1}{2a} \int_{x-at}^{x+at} g(s) ds,$$

we conclude that

$$\cos\left(t\sqrt{-a^2\partial_x^2}\right) f(x) = \frac{1}{2} [f(x+at) + f(x-at)] \text{ and} \quad (8.1)$$

$$\frac{\sin\left(t\sqrt{-a^2\partial_x^2}\right)}{\sqrt{-a^2\partial_x^2}} g(x) = \frac{1}{2a} \int_{x-at}^{x+at} g(s) ds. \quad (8.2)$$

We will use these results and the results of the next section to allow of to solve the forced wave equation.

### 8.2 Solving 1<sup>st</sup> - order equations using 2<sup>nd</sup> - order solutions

**Lemma 8.2 (A Key Fourier Transform Formula).** *For all  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $t > 0$ ,*

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4t}s^2}}{\sqrt{4\pi t}} \cos(\lambda s) ds = e^{-t\lambda^2}. \quad (8.3)$$

**Proof.** Fix  $t > 0$  and let

$$g(\lambda) := \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4t}s^2}}{\sqrt{4\pi t}} \cos(\lambda s) ds.$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} g'(\lambda) &= - \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4t}s^2}}{\sqrt{4\pi t}} s \sin(\lambda s) ds \\ &= 2t \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{d}{ds} \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4t}s^2}}{\sqrt{4\pi t}} \cdot \sin(\lambda s) ds \\ &= -2t \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4t}s^2}}{\sqrt{4\pi t}} \cdot \frac{d}{ds} \sin(\lambda s) ds \\ &= -2t\lambda \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4t}s^2}}{\sqrt{4\pi t}} \cdot \cos(\lambda s) ds = -2t\lambda g(\lambda). \end{aligned}$$

Solving this ODE for  $g$  gives,

$$g(\lambda) = e^{-t\lambda^2} g(0).$$

This completes the proof since  $g(0) = 1$  as we now show. Letting  $s = \sqrt{t}x$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} g^2(0) &= \left( \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4t}s^2}}{\sqrt{4\pi t}} ds \right)^2 = \left( \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4}x^2}}{\sqrt{4\pi}} dx \right)^2 \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4}x^2}}{\sqrt{4\pi}} dx \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4}y^2}}{\sqrt{4\pi}} dy = \iint_{\mathbb{R}^2} \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4}(x^2+y^2)}}{4\pi} dx dy \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4}r^2}}{4\pi} r dr d\theta = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^{\infty} e^{-\frac{1}{4}r^2} r dr = -e^{-\frac{1}{4}r^2} \Big|_0^{\infty} = 1. \end{aligned}$$

wherein the fifth equality we have gone to polar coordinates. ■

**Theorem 8.3 (Solving for  $e^{tA}$  via  $\cos(\sqrt{-At})$ ).** Suppose  $A$  is a  $N \times N$  symmetric matrix with all non-positive eigenvalues. Then

$$e^{tA} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4t}s^2}}{\sqrt{4\pi t}} \cos(\sqrt{-As}) ds \text{ for all } t > 0. \quad (8.4)$$

**Proof.** Formally we are taking  $\lambda = \sqrt{-A}$  in Eq. (8.3). To rigorously prove Eq. (8.4), let  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^N$  be an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors for  $A$ . By assumption we may write eigenvalue for  $v_i$  as  $-\lambda_i^2$ , i.e.  $Av_i = -\lambda_i^2 v_i$ .

Then

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4t}s^2}}{\sqrt{4\pi t}} \cos(\sqrt{-As}) v_i ds &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4t}s^2}}{\sqrt{4\pi t}} \cos(\lambda_i s) v_i ds \\ &= e^{-t\lambda_i^2} v_i = e^{tA} v_i \end{aligned}$$

and the result follows since both sides of Eq. (8.4) are linear. ■

### 8.2.1 The Solution to the Heat Equation on $\mathbb{R}$

*Example 8.4 (Heat Equation).* Let us try to formally use Theorem 8.3 to solve the heat equation,

$$u_t(t, x) = \partial_x^2 u(t, x) \text{ with } u(0, x) = f(x).$$

According to theorem 8.3 and Example 8.1 with  $a = 1$ , the solution should be given by

$$\begin{aligned} u(t, x) &= \left( e^{t\partial_x^2} f \right) (x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4t}s^2}}{\sqrt{4\pi t}} \cos(\sqrt{-\partial_x^2} s) f(x) ds \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4t}s^2}}{\sqrt{4\pi t}} \frac{1}{2} [f(x+s) + f(x-s)] ds \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x-s) \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4t}s^2}}{\sqrt{4\pi t}} ds = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(y) \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4t}(x-y)^2}}{\sqrt{4\pi t}} dy. \end{aligned}$$

**Exercise 8.1.** Suppose  $f$  is a bounded continuous function, show

$$u(t, x) := \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(y) \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4t}(x-y)^2}}{\sqrt{4\pi t}} dy = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(y) p(t, x-y) dy \quad (8.5)$$

solves the heat equation,  $u_t(t, x) = \partial_x^2 u(t, x)$  for  $t > 0$  where

$$p(t, x) := \frac{e^{-\frac{1}{4t}x^2}}{\sqrt{4\pi t}}. \quad (8.6)$$

**Hint:** first show  $p(t, x)$  solves the heat equation for  $t > 0$ . Then check  $u$  solves the heat equation by differentiating past the integral, which you should **assume** to be valid here.

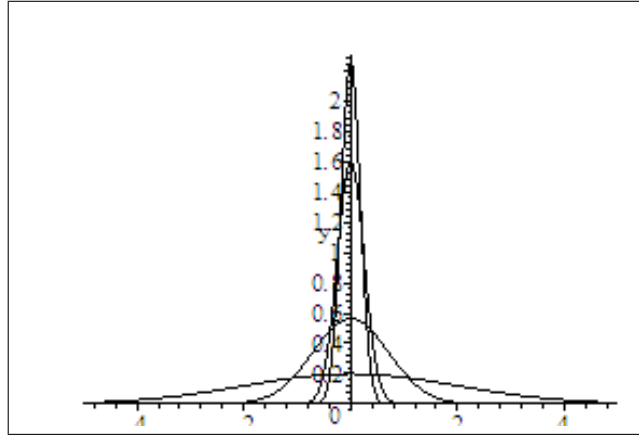
It is a fact that we will discuss later that

$$\lim_{t \downarrow 0} u(t, x) = f(x). \quad (8.7)$$

This is based on the idea that  $p(t, x)$  is approximating a “ $\delta$  - function,” see Figure 8.1

We will abbreviate all this by the suggestive formula,

$$\left( e^{t\partial_x^2} f \right) (x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(y) p(t, x-y) dy. \quad (8.8)$$



**Fig. 8.1.** Plots of  $x \rightarrow p(t, x)$  for  $t = 2$ ,  $t = \frac{1}{4}$ ,  $t = \frac{1}{32}$  and  $t = \frac{1}{64}$ . Notice that  $p(t, x)$  is being more and more concentrated near  $x = 0$  as  $t \downarrow 0$  while always keeping the total area under  $x \rightarrow p(t, x)$  equal to one.

### 8.3 Duhamel's Principle

**Theorem 8.5 (Duhamel's Principle I).** Suppose  $A$  is an  $N \times N$ ,  $f \in \mathbb{R}^N$  and  $h(t) \in \mathbb{R}^N$  be given. Then the ordinary differential equation,

$$\dot{u}(t) = Au(t) + h(t) \text{ with} \quad (8.9)$$

$$u(0) = f \quad (8.10)$$

has a unique solution given by

$$u(t) = e^{tA}f + \int_0^t e^{(t-\tau)A}h(\tau) d\tau. \quad (8.11)$$

In words,  $u(t)$  is constructed by “adding” together the solutions to a bunch of initial value problems where  $h \equiv 0$ . Namely,  $e^{tA}f$  is the solution to

$$\dot{u}(t) = Au(t) \text{ with } u(0) = f$$

while  $e^{(t-\tau)A}h(\tau)$  is the solution to

$$\dot{u}(t) = Au(t) \text{ with } u(\tau) = h(\tau).$$

Hence we have

$$u(t) = \left( \begin{array}{l} \text{solution at time } t \text{ to} \\ \dot{u}(t) = Au(t) \text{ \& } u(0) = f \end{array} \right) + \int_0^t \left( \begin{array}{l} \text{solution at time } t - \tau \text{ to} \\ \dot{u}(t) = Au(t) \text{ \& } u(0) = h(\tau) \end{array} \right) d\tau.$$

or equivalently that

$$u(t) = \left( \begin{array}{l} \text{solution at time } t \text{ to} \\ \dot{u}(t) = Au(t) \text{ \& } u(0) = f \end{array} \right) + \int_0^t \left( \begin{array}{l} \text{solution at time } t \text{ to} \\ \dot{u}(t) = Au(t) \text{ \& } u(\tau) = h(\tau) \end{array} \right) d\tau.$$

**Proof.** Suppose  $u$  solves Eq. (8.9), then by the product rule

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt} [e^{-tA}u(t)] &= -Ae^{-tA}u(t) + e^{-tA}\dot{u}(t) \\ &= -e^{-tA}Au(t) + e^{-tA}(Au(t) + h(t)) \\ &= e^{-tA}h(t). \end{aligned}$$

Integrating this equation then shows

$$e^{-tA}u(t) = u(0) + \int_0^t e^{-\tau A}h(\tau) d\tau = f + \int_0^t e^{-\tau A}h(\tau) d\tau.$$

Multiplying this equation by  $e^{tA}$  on the left shows that if  $u$  exists it must be given by Eq. (8.11).

To prove existence, let  $u$  now be defined by Eq. (8.11) and notice that we may write it as

$$u(t) = e^{tA} \left[ f + \int_0^t e^{-\tau A}h(\tau) d\tau \right].$$

Thus  $u(0) = f$  and, by the product rule and the fundamental theorem of calculus,

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{u}(t) &= Ae^{tA} \left[ f + \int_0^t e^{-\tau A}h(\tau) d\tau \right] + e^{tA} [e^{-tA}h(t)] \\ &= Au(t) + h(t). \end{aligned}$$

■

*Example 8.6.* Continuing the notation and using the results of Example 1.8,

$$A := \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 7 & -2 \\ 7 & 1 & -2 \\ -2 & -2 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

with eigenvectors/eigenvalues given by

$$v_1 := \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow -6, \quad v_2 := \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow 6, \quad v_3 := \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow 12.$$

We wish to solve,

$$\dot{u}(t) = Au(t) + tf \text{ with } u(0) = 0$$

where

$$f = (1, 2, 3)^{\text{tr}} = \frac{1}{2}v_1 + 2v_2 + \frac{1}{2}v_3$$

The solution is

$$\begin{aligned} u(t) &= \int_0^t \tau e^{(t-\tau)A} f d\tau \\ &= \int_0^t \tau \left( \frac{1}{2}e^{-6(t-\tau)}v_1 + 2e^{6(t-\tau)}v_2 + \frac{1}{2}e^{12(t-\tau)}v_3 \right) d\tau. \end{aligned}$$

To work this out we notice that

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^t \tau e^{-\lambda\tau} d\tau &= -\frac{d}{d\lambda} \int_0^t e^{-\lambda\tau} d\tau = -\frac{d}{d\lambda} \left[ \frac{e^{-\lambda\tau}}{-\lambda} \Big|_{\tau=0}^{\tau=t} \right] \\ &= \frac{d}{d\lambda} \frac{e^{-\lambda t} - 1}{\lambda} \\ &= \frac{1}{\lambda^2} (1 - (t\lambda + 1)e^{-t\lambda}) \end{aligned}$$

and therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^t \tau e^{\lambda(t-\tau)} d\tau &= e^{\lambda t} \frac{1}{\lambda^2} (1 - (t\lambda + 1)e^{-t\lambda}) \\ &= \frac{1}{\lambda^2} (e^{\lambda t} - (1 + t\lambda)). \end{aligned}$$

Hence the answer is given by

$$u(t) = \left( \begin{array}{l} \frac{1}{2 \cdot 6^2} (e^{-6t} - 1 + 6t)v_1 + \frac{2}{6^2} (e^{6t} - 1 - 6t)v_2 \\ + \frac{1}{2 \cdot 12^2} (e^{12t} - 1 - 12t)v_3 \end{array} \right).$$

**Theorem 8.7 (Duhamel's Principle II).** Suppose  $A$  is an  $N \times N$ ,  $f, g \in \mathbb{R}^N$  and  $h(t) \in \mathbb{R}^N$  be given. Then the ordinary differential equation,

$$\ddot{u}(t) = Au(t) + h(t) \text{ with} \quad (8.12)$$

$$u(0) = f \text{ and } \dot{u}(0) = g \quad (8.13)$$

has a unique solution given by

$$u(t) = \left( \cos \sqrt{-At} \right) f + \frac{\sin \sqrt{-At}}{\sqrt{-A}} g + \int_0^t \frac{\sin \sqrt{-A}(t-\tau)}{\sqrt{-A}} h(\tau) d\tau. \quad (8.14)$$

Again, in words,  $u(t)$  is constructed by "adding" the solutions to a bunch of initial value problems where  $h \equiv 0$ . Namely,

$$\left( \cos \sqrt{-At} \right) f + \frac{\sin \sqrt{-At}}{\sqrt{-A}} g$$

is the solution to

$$\ddot{u}(t) = Au(t) \text{ with } u(0) = f \text{ and } \dot{u}(0) = g$$

while  $\frac{\sin \sqrt{-A}(t-\tau)}{\sqrt{-A}}h(\tau)$  is the solution to

$$\ddot{u}(t) = Au(t) \text{ with } u(\tau) = 0 \text{ and } \dot{u}(\tau) = h(\tau)$$

so

$$u(t) = \begin{pmatrix} \text{solution at time } t \text{ to} \\ \ddot{u}(t) = Au(t) \text{ with} \\ u(0) = f \text{ \& } \dot{u}(0) = g \end{pmatrix} + \int_0^t \begin{pmatrix} \text{solution at time } t \text{ to} \\ \ddot{u}(t) = Au(t) \text{ with} \\ u(\tau) = 0 \text{ \& } \dot{u}(\tau) = h(\tau) \end{pmatrix} d\tau.$$

**Proof.** The best way to understand this theorem is to reduce it to the first version of Duhamel's principle in Theorem 8.5. To this end, let  $v(t) = \dot{u}(t)$ , then the pair  $\begin{pmatrix} u(t) \\ v(t) \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^N \times \mathbb{R}^N$  solves the equation,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt} \begin{pmatrix} u(t) \\ v(t) \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} \dot{u}(t) \\ \dot{v}(t) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} v(t) \\ \ddot{u}(t) \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} v(t) \\ Au(t) + h(t) \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & I \\ A & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} u(t) \\ v(t) \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ h(t) \end{pmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

Let

$$B := \begin{pmatrix} 0 & I \\ A & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

– a  $2N \times 2N$  matrix. Then by Theorem 8.5, we have

$$\begin{pmatrix} u(t) \\ v(t) \end{pmatrix} = e^{tB} \begin{pmatrix} f \\ g \end{pmatrix} + \int_0^t e^{(t-\tau)B} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ h(\tau) \end{pmatrix} d\tau. \quad (8.15)$$

When  $h \equiv 0$ , we know that

$$u(t) = (\cos \sqrt{-At}) f + \frac{\sin \sqrt{-At}}{\sqrt{-A}} g$$

from which we deduce

$$e^{tB} \begin{pmatrix} f \\ g \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} (\cos \sqrt{-At}) f + \frac{\sin \sqrt{-At}}{\sqrt{-A}} g \\ * \end{pmatrix}. \quad (8.16)$$

The second component of  $e^{tB} \begin{pmatrix} f \\ g \end{pmatrix}$  is easily found as well (just differentiate the first component) but we will not need it. Because of Eq. (8.16),

$$e^{(t-\tau)B} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ h(\tau) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\sin \sqrt{-A}(t-\tau)}{\sqrt{-A}} h(\tau) \\ * \end{pmatrix}. \quad (8.17)$$

Hence taking the first component of Eq. (8.15), using Eqs. (8.16) and (8.17), gives Eq. (8.14).

We may also directly check that Eq. (8.14) works. Indeed, for simplicity assume  $f = 0 = g$  so that

$$u(t) = \int_0^t \frac{\sin \sqrt{-A}(t-\tau)}{\sqrt{-A}} h(\tau) d\tau.$$

Then  $u(0) = 0$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{u}(t) &= \frac{\sin \sqrt{-A}(t-\tau)}{\sqrt{-A}} h(\tau) \Big|_{\tau=t} + \int_0^t \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\sin \sqrt{-A}(t-\tau)}{\sqrt{-A}} h(\tau) d\tau \\ &= \int_0^t \cos \sqrt{-A}(t-\tau) h(\tau) d\tau \end{aligned}$$

(so  $\dot{u}(0) = 0$ ) and similarly,

$$\begin{aligned} \ddot{u}(t) &= \cos \sqrt{-A}(t-\tau) h(\tau) \Big|_{\tau=t} + \int_0^t \frac{d}{dt} \cos \sqrt{-A}(t-\tau) h(\tau) d\tau \\ &= h(t) + \int_0^t -\sqrt{-A} \sin \sqrt{-A}(t-\tau) h(\tau) d\tau \\ &= h(t) - (\sqrt{-A})^2 \int_0^t \frac{\sin \sqrt{-A}(t-\tau)}{\sqrt{-A}} h(\tau) d\tau \\ &= h(t) + Au(t) \end{aligned}$$

as desired. ■

*Example 8.8.* Continuing the notation and using the results of Example 1.8,

$$A := \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 7 & -2 \\ 7 & 1 & -2 \\ -2 & -2 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

with eigenvectors/eigenvalues given by

$$v_1 := \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow -6, \quad v_2 := \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow 6, \quad v_3 := \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} \leftrightarrow 12.$$



We wish to solve,

$$\ddot{u}(t) = Au(t) + h \text{ with } u(0) = 0 = \dot{u}(0)$$

where

$$h = (1, 2, 3)^{\text{tr}} = \frac{1}{2}v_1 + 2v_2 + \frac{1}{2}v_3.$$

The solution is given by

$$\begin{aligned} u(t) &= \int_0^t \frac{\sin \sqrt{-A}(t-\tau)}{\sqrt{-A}} h d\tau \\ &= \int_0^t \frac{\sin \sqrt{-A}(t-\tau)}{\sqrt{-A}} \left( \frac{1}{2}v_1 + 2v_2 + \frac{1}{2}v_3 \right) d\tau \\ &= \int_0^t \left( \frac{\sin \sqrt{6}(t-\tau)}{\sqrt{6}} \frac{1}{2}v_1 + \frac{\sinh \sqrt{6}(t-\tau)}{\sqrt{6}} 2v_2 \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \frac{\sinh \sqrt{12}(t-\tau)}{\sqrt{12}} \frac{1}{2}v_3 \right) d\tau. \end{aligned}$$

Now

$$\int_0^t \frac{\sin a(t-\tau)}{a} d\tau = \frac{\cos a(t-\tau)}{a^2} \Big|_{\tau=0}^{\tau=t} = \frac{1 - \cos at}{a^2}$$

and similarly,

$$\int_0^t \frac{\sinh a(t-\tau)}{a} d\tau = -\frac{\cosh a(t-\tau)}{a^2} \Big|_{\tau=0}^{\tau=t} = -\frac{1 - \cosh at}{a^2}$$

so that

$$u(t) = \frac{1 - \cos \sqrt{6}t}{6} \frac{1}{2}v_1 + \frac{\cosh \sqrt{6}t - 1}{6} 2v_2 + \frac{\cosh \sqrt{12}t - 1}{12} \frac{1}{2}v_3.$$

Let us do a quick check that this solution is correct. For example let us check that

$$u(t) = \frac{1 - \cos \sqrt{6}t}{6} v_1$$

solves  $\ddot{u}(t) = Au(t) + v_1$ . This is the case since,

$$\begin{aligned} \ddot{u}(t) - Au(t) &= \cos \sqrt{6}t \cdot v_1 - Au(t) \\ &= \cos \sqrt{6}t \cdot v_1 - \frac{1 - \cos \sqrt{6}t}{6} Av_1 \\ &= \cos \sqrt{6}t \cdot v_1 + \left(1 - \cos \sqrt{6}t\right) v_1 = v_1 \end{aligned}$$

as desired.

**Exercise 8.2.** Let

$$A := \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

and  $h = (-1, 1, 0)^{\text{tr}}$ . Solve the following equations for  $u$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{u}(t) &= Au(t) + h \text{ with } u(0) = \mathbf{0} = (0, 0, 0)^{\text{tr}} \text{ and} \\ \ddot{u}(t) &= Au(t) + h \text{ with } u(0) = \mathbf{0} \text{ and } \dot{u}(0) = \mathbf{0}.\end{aligned}$$

Write your solutions in the form

$$u(t) = \sum_{i=1}^3 a_i(t) v_i$$

where the functions  $a_i$  are to be determined.

### 8.4 Application of Duhamel's principle to 1 - $d$ wave and heat equations

Using the formulas for  $\cos(t\sqrt{-\partial_x^2})$  and  $\frac{\sin(t\sqrt{-\partial_x^2})}{\sqrt{-\partial_x^2}}$  in Eqs. (8.1) and (8.2) respectively we are now in a position to formally apply Duhamel's principle in order to solve the forced wave equation;

$$u_{tt} = u_{xx} + h \text{ with } u(0, \cdot) = f \text{ and } u_t(0, \cdot) = g. \quad (8.18)$$

**Theorem 8.9.** *If  $f \in C^2(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R})$  and  $g \in C^1(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R})$ , and  $h \in C(\mathbb{R}^2, \mathbb{R})$  such that  $h_x$  exists and  $h_x \in C(\mathbb{R}^2, \mathbb{R})$ , then Eq. (8.18) has a unique solution  $u(t, x)$  given by Eq. (8.19).*

**Proof.** By a formal application of Theorem 8.5 with  $A = \partial_x^2$  suggest that

$$u(t, \cdot) = \cos(t\sqrt{-\partial_x^2})f + \frac{\sin(t\sqrt{-\partial_x^2})}{\sqrt{-\partial_x^2}}g + \int_0^t \frac{\sin((t-\tau)\sqrt{-\partial_x^2})}{\sqrt{-\partial_x^2}}h(\tau, \cdot)d\tau.$$

Moreover using the formulas in Eqs. (8.1) and (8.2) then implies

$$u(t, x) = \frac{1}{2} [f(x+t) + f(x-t)] + \frac{1}{2} \int_{-t}^t g(x+s)ds + \frac{1}{2} \int_0^t d\tau \int_{x-t+\tau}^{x+t-\tau} dy h(\tau, y). \quad (8.19)$$

To verify that  $u$  defined in Eq. (8.19) satisfies Eq. (8.18) it suffices (by what we have already done) to assume  $f = g = 0$  so that

$$u(t, x) = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^t d\tau \int_{x-t+\tau}^{x+t-\tau} dy h(\tau, y).$$

Now

$$\begin{aligned}
u_t &= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^t [h(\tau, x+t-\tau) + h(\tau, x-t+\tau)] d\tau, \\
u_{tt} &= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^t [h_x(\tau, x+t-\tau) - h_x(\tau, x-t+\tau)] d\tau + h(t, x) \\
u_x(t, x) &= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^t d\tau [h(\tau, x+t-\tau) - h(\tau, x-t+\tau)] \text{ and} \\
u_{xx}(t, x) &= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^t d\tau [h_x(\tau, x+t-\tau) - h_x(\tau, x-t+\tau)]
\end{aligned}$$

so that  $u_{tt} - u_{xx} = h$  and  $u(0, x) = u_t(0, x) = 0$ .

The only thing left to prove is the uniqueness assertion. For this suppose that  $v$  is another solution, then  $(u - v)$  solves the wave equation (8.18) with  $f = g = 0$  and hence by the uniqueness assertion in Theorem 2.4 (with  $a = 1$ ),  $u - v \equiv 0$ . ■

Similarly we may solve the forced heat equation as well.

**Theorem 8.10 (The Forced Heat Equation).** *Suppose that  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  and  $h : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  are bounded continuous functions, then the function*

$$u(t, x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} p(t, x-y) f(y) dy + \int_0^t d\tau \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} p(t-\tau, x-y) h(\tau, y) dy \quad (8.20)$$

solves the heat equation

$$u_t = u_{xx} + h \text{ with } \lim_{t \downarrow 0} u(t, x) = f(x). \quad (8.21)$$

**Proof.** Formally applying Theorem 8.5 with  $A = \partial_x^2$  suggests that

$$u(t, x) = e^{t\partial_x^2} f(x) + \int_0^t \left[ e^{(t-\tau)\partial_x^2} h(\tau, \cdot) \right] (x) d\tau.$$

In light of Eq. (8.8), this equation then gives rise to Eq. (8.20). It is of course possible to directly check that Eq. (8.20) solves Eq. (8.21), however I will not stop to do it here. ■

*Example 8.11 (Problem 40.4 on p. 128).* Solve the following problem on  $0 < x < \pi$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
u_t &= ku_{xx} \text{ with } u(0, x) = 0 \text{ and} \\
u(t, 0) &= 0 \text{ and } u(t, \pi) = F(t).
\end{aligned}$$

where  $F(0) = 0$ .

To do this, let  $\varphi(t, x) = \frac{x}{\pi} F(t)$  and then let  $U(t, x) = u(t, x) - \varphi(t, x)$ . We then have

$$\begin{aligned}(\partial_t - k\partial_x^2)U &= (\partial_t - k\partial_x^2)[u(t, x) - \varphi(t, x)] = -\frac{x}{\pi}\dot{F}(t) \text{ with} \\ U(0, x) &= -\varphi(0, x) = 0\end{aligned}$$

Hence the solution to the problem is

$$\begin{aligned}U(t, x) &= -\int_0^t e^{(t-\tau)L}\frac{x}{\pi}\dot{F}(\tau) d\tau \\ &= -e^{(t-\tau)L}\frac{x}{\pi}F(\tau)\Big|_0^t + \int_0^t F(\tau)\frac{d}{d\tau}e^{(t-\tau)L}\frac{x}{\pi}d\tau \\ &= -\frac{x}{\pi}F(t) - \int_0^t F(\tau)Le^{(t-\tau)L}\frac{x}{\pi}d\tau\end{aligned}$$

and therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}u(t, x) &= \frac{x}{\pi}F(t) - \frac{x}{\pi}F(t) - \int_0^t F(\tau)Le^{(t-\tau)L}\frac{x}{\pi}d\tau \\ &= -\int_0^t F(\tau)Le^{(t-\tau)L}\frac{x}{\pi}d\tau.\end{aligned}$$

Recalling that

$$x = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{n} (-1)^{n+1} \sin nx$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned}Le^{(t-\tau)L}x &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{n} (-1)^{n+1} Le^{(t-\tau)L} \sin nx \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{n} (-1)^{n+1} (-kn^2) e^{-(t-\tau)kn^2} \sin nx\end{aligned}$$

we get

$$\begin{aligned}u(t, x) &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{n\pi} (-1)^n (-kn^2) \left( \int_0^t e^{-(t-\tau)kn^2} F(\tau) d\tau \right) \sin nx \\ &= \frac{2k}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{n+1} \left( \int_0^t e^{-(t-\tau)kn^2} F(\tau) d\tau \right) n \sin nx.\end{aligned}$$

*Example 8.12 (Problem 40.4 on p. 128).* Solve the following problem on  $0 < x < \pi$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}u_t &= ku_{xx} \text{ with } u(0, x) = 0 \text{ and} \\ u(t, 0) &= 0 \text{ and } u(t, \pi) = F(t).\end{aligned}$$

where  $F(0) = 0$ .

To do this, let  $\varphi(t, x) = \frac{x}{\pi} F(t)$  and then let  $U(t, x) = u(t, x) - \varphi(t, x)$ . We then have

$$\begin{aligned} (\partial_t - k\partial_x^2)U &= (\partial_t - k\partial_x^2)[u(t, x) - \varphi(t, x)] = -\frac{x}{\pi}\dot{F}(t) \text{ with} \\ U(0, x) &= -\varphi(0, x) = 0 \\ U(t, 0) &= 0 = U(t, \pi). \end{aligned}$$

Hence the solution to the problem is

$$\begin{aligned} U(t, x) &= -\int_0^t e^{(t-\tau)L} \frac{x}{\pi} \dot{F}(\tau) d\tau \\ &= -e^{(t-\tau)L} \frac{x}{\pi} F(\tau) \Big|_0^t + \int_0^t F(\tau) \frac{d}{d\tau} e^{(t-\tau)L} \frac{x}{\pi} d\tau \\ &= -\frac{x}{\pi} F(t) - \int_0^t F(\tau) L e^{(t-\tau)L} \frac{x}{\pi} d\tau \end{aligned}$$

and therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} u(t, x) &= \frac{x}{\pi} F(t) - \frac{x}{\pi} F(t) - \int_0^t F(\tau) L e^{(t-\tau)L} \frac{x}{\pi} d\tau \\ &= -\int_0^t F(\tau) L e^{(t-\tau)L} \frac{x}{\pi} d\tau. \end{aligned}$$

Recalling that

$$x = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{n} (-1)^{n+1} \sin nx$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned} L e^{(t-\tau)L} x &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{n} (-1)^{n+1} L e^{(t-\tau)L} \sin nx \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{n} (-1)^{n+1} (-kn^2) e^{-(t-\tau)kn^2} \sin nx \end{aligned}$$

we get

$$\begin{aligned} u(t, x) &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{n\pi} (-1)^n (-kn^2) \left( \int_0^t e^{-(t-\tau)kn^2} F(\tau) d\tau \right) \sin nx \\ &= \frac{2k}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{n+1} \left( \int_0^t e^{-(t-\tau)kn^2} F(\tau) d\tau \right) n \sin nx. \end{aligned}$$

*Example 8.13 (Forced Wave Equation problem).* Consider the forced wave equation,

$$u_{tt} = u_{xx} + \sin \frac{x}{2} \text{ with } u(t, 0) = u_x(t, \pi) = 0$$

$$u(0, x) = f(x) \text{ and } u_x(0, x) = g(x).$$

Letting  $L = \frac{d^2}{dx^2}$  acting on functions satisfying  $h(0) = 0 = h'(\pi)$ , the formal solution to our problems is given by

$$u(t, x) = \cos(t\sqrt{-L})f(x) + \frac{\sin(t\sqrt{-L})}{\sqrt{-L}}g(x)$$

$$+ \int_0^t \frac{\sin((t-\tau)\sqrt{-L})}{\sqrt{-L}} \left(\sin \frac{x}{2}\right) d\tau.$$

In order to work this out we need to recall (see Problem 53.1 on p. 173) that the eigenfunctions

$$\varphi_n(x) = \sin \alpha_n x \text{ where } \alpha_n = \frac{2n-1}{2} \text{ for } n \in \mathbb{N}$$

and  $L\varphi_n = -\alpha_n^2\varphi_n$  and

$$\int_0^\pi \sin^2 \alpha_n x dx = \int_0^\pi \frac{1 - \cos 2\alpha_n x}{2} dx = \frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\sin 2\alpha_n x}{2\alpha_n} \Big|_0^\pi = \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

Thus we have

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f_n \sin \alpha_n x \text{ and } g(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} g_n \sin \alpha_n x$$

where

$$f_n = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\pi f(x) \sin \alpha_n x dx \text{ and } g_n = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\pi g(x) \sin \alpha_n x dx.$$

The solution to our problem is thus

$$u(t, x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f_n \cos(t\sqrt{-L}) \sin \alpha_n x + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} g_n \frac{\sin(t\sqrt{-L})}{\sqrt{-L}} \sin \alpha_n x$$

$$+ \int_0^t \frac{\sin((t-\tau)/2)}{1/2} \left(\sin \frac{x}{2}\right) d\tau$$

$$= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f_n \cos(\alpha_n t) \sin \alpha_n x + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} g_n \frac{\sin(\alpha_n t)}{\alpha_n} \sin \alpha_n x$$

$$- 4 \cos((t-\tau)/2) \Big|_0^t \left(\sin \frac{x}{2}\right)$$

$$= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f_n \cos(\alpha_n t) \sin \alpha_n x + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} g_n \frac{\sin(\alpha_n t)}{\alpha_n} \sin \alpha_n x + 4 \left[1 - \cos \frac{t}{2}\right] \sin \frac{x}{2}.$$

Let us check that

$$v(t, x) = 4 \left[ 1 - \cos \frac{t}{2} \right] \sin \frac{x}{2}$$

does satisfy the correct equation. It is easily seen that  $v(0, x) = \dot{v}(0, x) = 0$  and

$$\begin{aligned} v_{tt} - v_{xx} &= 4 \left( \frac{1}{4} \cos \frac{t}{2} \sin \frac{x}{2} + \frac{1}{4} \left[ 1 - \cos \frac{t}{2} \right] \sin \frac{x}{2} \right) \\ &= \sin \frac{x}{2} \end{aligned}$$

as required.

*Example 8.14 (Resonance in the Wave Equation).* Consider now the forced equation with a time dependent forcing, namely

$$\begin{aligned} u_{tt} &= u_{xx} + \sin \frac{t}{2} \sin \frac{x}{2} \text{ with } u(t, 0) = u_x(t, \pi) = 0 \\ u(0, x) &= 0 \text{ and } u_x(0, x) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

The solution is given by

$$\begin{aligned} u(t, x) &= \int_0^t \frac{\sin((t-\tau)\sqrt{-L})}{\sqrt{-L}} \left( \sin \frac{\tau}{2} \sin \frac{x}{2} \right) d\tau \\ &= \int_0^t \frac{\sin((t-\tau)\frac{1}{2})}{\frac{1}{2}} \left( \sin \frac{\tau}{2} \sin \frac{x}{2} \right) d\tau \\ &= 2 \int_0^t \sin(t-\tau) \frac{1}{2} \sin \frac{\tau}{2} d\tau \sin \frac{x}{2} \\ &= 2 \left( \sin \frac{1}{2}t - \frac{1}{2}t \cos \frac{1}{2}t \right) \sin \frac{x}{2} \\ &= \left( 2 \sin \frac{1}{2}t - t \cos \frac{1}{2}t \right) \sin \frac{x}{2} \end{aligned}$$

wherein we have computed this integral using the identity,

$$\sin A \sin B = \frac{1}{2} (\cos(A-B) - \cos(A+B))$$

with  $A = (t-\tau)\frac{1}{2}$  and  $B = \tau/2$  to find

$$\begin{aligned} 2 \int_0^t \sin \left( \frac{t-\tau}{2} \right) \sin \frac{\tau}{2} d\tau &= \int_0^t \left( \cos \left( \frac{t}{2} - \tau \right) - \cos \left( \frac{t}{2} \right) \right) d\tau \\ &= \left( -\sin \left( \frac{t}{2} - \tau \right) \Big|_0^t - t \cos \frac{t}{2} \right) \\ &= 2 \sin \frac{t}{2} - t \cos \frac{t}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

This is an example the phenomenon of resonance, namely, the amplitude of  $u(t, x)$  can be arbitrarily large for most values of large  $t$ .

**Proposition 8.15.** *The solution to*

$$u_{tt} = ku_{xx} \text{ with } u(0, x) = 0 = u_t(0, x) \text{ and} \\ u(t, 0) = 0, \text{ and } u(t, \pi) = F(t),$$

where  $0 < x < \pi$  and  $u(0) = 0$  is given by

$$u(t, x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{n+1} \int_0^t \sin((t-\tau)n) F(\tau) d\tau \sin nx.$$

Moreover if  $F(\tau) = \sin \tau$ , then

$$u(t, x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \left( \frac{1}{2} \sin t - \frac{1}{2} t \cos t \right) \sin nx + (\text{Terms remaining bounded}).$$

Notice that  $t \cos t$  can be arbitrarily large, another manifestation of resonance.

**Proof.** To prove this, let  $\varphi(t, x) = \frac{x}{\pi} F(t)$  and then let  $U(t, x) = u(t, x) - \varphi(t, x)$ . We then have

$$(\partial_t^2 - k\partial_x^2) U = (\partial_t^2 - k\partial_x^2) [u(t, x) - \varphi(t, x)] = -\frac{x}{\pi} \ddot{F}(t) \text{ with} \\ U(0, x) = -\varphi(0, x) = 0 \\ U_t(0, x) = -\dot{F}(0) \frac{x}{\pi} \text{ and} \\ U(t, 0) = 0 = U(t, \pi).$$

Hence the solution to the problem is

$$U(t, x) = -\dot{F}(0) \frac{\sin(t\sqrt{-L})}{\sqrt{-L}} \frac{x}{\pi} - \int_0^t \frac{\sin((t-\tau)\sqrt{-L})}{\sqrt{-L}} \frac{x}{\pi} \ddot{F}(\tau) d\tau.$$

Integrating the last term by parts shows,

$$\int_0^t \frac{\sin((t-\tau)\sqrt{-L})}{\sqrt{-L}} \frac{x}{\pi} \ddot{F}(\tau) d\tau = \left[ \frac{\sin((t-\tau)\sqrt{-L})}{\sqrt{-L}} \frac{x}{\pi} \dot{F}(\tau) \right]_{\tau=0}^{\tau=t} \\ - \int_0^t \frac{d}{d\tau} \frac{\sin((t-\tau)\sqrt{-L})}{\sqrt{-L}} \frac{x}{\pi} \dot{F}(\tau) d\tau \\ = -\frac{\sin(t\sqrt{-L})}{\sqrt{-L}} \frac{x}{\pi} \dot{F}(0) \\ + \int_0^t \cos((t-\tau)\sqrt{-L}) \frac{x}{\pi} \dot{F}(\tau) d\tau.$$

Combining the last two equations then implies that

$$U(t, x) = - \int_0^t \cos((t-\tau)\sqrt{-L}) \frac{x}{\pi} \dot{F}(\tau) d\tau.$$



We now integrate by parts one more time to find,

$$\begin{aligned} U(t, x) &= -\cos\left((t-\tau)\sqrt{-L}\right)\frac{x}{\pi}F(\tau)\Big|_{\tau=0}^{\tau=t} + \int_0^t \frac{d}{d\tau} \cos\left((t-\tau)\sqrt{-L}\right)\frac{x}{\pi}F(\tau) d\tau \\ &= -\frac{x}{\pi}F(t) + \int_0^t \sqrt{-L} \sin\left((t-\tau)\sqrt{-L}\right)\frac{x}{\pi}F(\tau) d\tau. \end{aligned}$$

and therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} u(t, x) &= \frac{x}{\pi}F(t) - \frac{x}{\pi}F(t) + \int_0^t \sqrt{-L} \sin\left((t-\tau)\sqrt{-L}\right)\frac{x}{\pi}F(\tau) d\tau \\ &= \int_0^t \sqrt{-L} \sin\left((t-\tau)\sqrt{-L}\right)\frac{x}{\pi}F(\tau) d\tau \\ &= \int_0^t \sqrt{-L} \sin\left((t-\tau)\sqrt{-L}\right)\frac{1}{\pi} \left(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{n} (-1)^{n+1} \sin nx\right) F(\tau) d\tau \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} (-1)^{n+1} \int_0^t n \sin((t-\tau)n) F(\tau) d\tau (\sin nx) \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{n+1} \int_0^t \sin((t-\tau)n) F(\tau) d\tau \sin nx. \end{aligned}$$

To be more explicit, let us suppose that  $F(\tau) = \sin \tau$ , in this case

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^t \sin((t-\tau)n) \sin \tau d\tau &= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^t (\cos((n+1)\tau - nt) - \cos(nt + (1-n)\tau)) d\tau \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{\sin((n+1)\tau - nt)}{n+1} - \frac{\sin(nt + (1-n)\tau)}{(1-n)} \right]_{\tau=0}^{\tau=t} \end{aligned}$$

for  $n \neq 1$  and for  $n = 1$  we have

$$\int_0^t \sin((t-\tau)) \sin \tau d\tau = \frac{1}{2} \sin t - \frac{1}{2} t \cos t.$$

Therefore

$$u(t, x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \left( \frac{1}{2} \sin t - \frac{1}{2} t \cos t \right) \sin x + \sum (\text{Terms remaining bounded}).$$

■

---

## Problems In other Coordinates Systems

### 9.1 A Heat equation in spherical coordinates

*Example 9.1 (Example 40.3 on p. 126 (Spherical Coordinates)).* Let  $x \in \mathbb{R}^3$ ,  $|x| = \sqrt{x \cdot x}$  and

$$\Omega = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^3 : |x| \leq a\}.$$

We wish to solve

$$\begin{aligned} u_t(t, x) &= \Delta u(t, x) \text{ for } x \in \Omega \text{ with} \\ u(t, x) &= 0 \text{ if } |x| = a \text{ and } u(0, x) = f(|x|) \text{ for } x \in \Omega \end{aligned}$$

We will look for a solution which only depends on  $r = |x|$ , where  $r$  is the radial variable in spherical coordinates. Recalling from Eqs. (1.15) and (1.16) that

$$\Delta g = \frac{1}{r} \partial_r^2 (rg) + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin \varphi} \partial_\varphi (\sin \varphi \partial_\varphi g) + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin^2 \varphi} \partial_\theta^2 g$$

our equations becomes

$$\begin{aligned} u_t(t, r) &= \frac{1}{r} \partial_r^2 (ru(t, r)) = \frac{1}{r} (ru)_{rr}(t, r) \text{ with} \\ u(t, a) &= 0 \text{ and } u(0, r) = f(r) \text{ for } 0 \leq r \leq a. \end{aligned}$$

Hence if we let  $v(t, r) := ru(t, r)$ , we find that

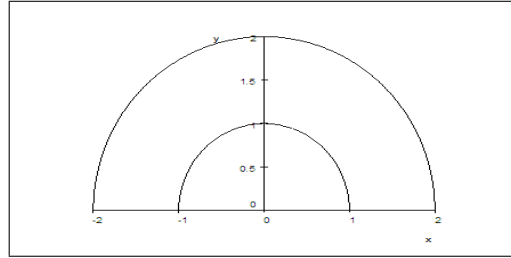
$$v_t(t, r) = v_{rr}(t, r) \text{ with } v(t, a) = 0 = v(t, 0) \text{ and } v(0, r) = rf(r) \text{ for } 0 \leq r \leq a.$$

We can now solve this equation for  $v$  by the standard means, namely,

$$rf(r) = \sum b_n \sin n\pi \frac{r}{a}$$

with

$$b_n := \frac{2}{a} \int_0^a rf(r) \sin n\pi r \, dr.$$



**Fig. 9.1.** The region  $\Omega$ .

Then we have, with  $L = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2}$  with Dirichlet boundary conditions, that

$$\begin{aligned} v(t, r) &= e^{tL} \sum b_n \sin n\pi \frac{r}{a} = \sum b_n e^{tL} \sin n\pi \frac{r}{a} \\ &= \sum b_n \exp\left(t \left(-\frac{n^2\pi^2}{a^2}\right)\right) \sin n\pi \frac{r}{a} \end{aligned}$$

and so

$$u(t, r) = \frac{1}{r} \sum b_n \exp\left(t \left(-\frac{n^2\pi^2}{a^2}\right)\right) \sin n\pi \frac{r}{a}.$$

## 9.2 Problems with cylindrical symmetries

*Example 9.2 (Example 43.1 on p. 137 (Harmonic functions in cylindrical coordinates)).* In this example,  $\Omega$  denotes those points which may be written in polar coordinates  $(\rho, \theta)$  with  $1 < \rho < b$  and  $0 < \theta < \pi$ , see Figure 9.1 below. We wish to solve

$$\Delta u = 0 \text{ with} \quad (9.1)$$

$$u(\rho, 0) = 0 = u(\rho, \pi) \text{ for } 1 < \rho < b \text{ and} \quad (9.2)$$

$$u(1, \theta) = f(\theta) \text{ and } u(b, \theta) = g(\theta) \text{ for } 0 < \theta < \pi. \quad (9.3)$$

Recalling that  $\Delta$  in polar coordinates is given by

$$\Delta u = \frac{1}{\rho} \partial_\rho (\rho \partial_\rho u) + \frac{1}{\rho^2} \partial_\theta^2 u \quad (9.4)$$

we look for some solutions to Eq. (9.1) and Eq. (9.2) of the form  $u(\rho, \theta) = R(\rho) \Theta(\theta)$ . To short cut things, from experience we know that  $\Theta(\theta) = \sin n\theta$  for some  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and hence

$$u_n(\rho, \theta) = R(\rho) \sin n\theta.$$

Plugging this into Eq. (9.1) then implies

$$0 = \frac{1}{\rho} \partial_\rho (\rho \partial_\rho R) - \frac{n^2}{\rho^2} R.$$

This is an Euler type equation which may be solved by looking for solution of the form  $R(\rho) = \rho^\alpha$ . This happens iff

$$0 = \alpha^2 \rho^{\alpha-2} - n^2 \rho^{\alpha-2}$$

and hence we must have  $\alpha^2 = n^2$  for  $\alpha = \pm n$ . Thus we find

$$u_n(\rho, \theta) = (A_n \rho^n + B_n \rho^{-n}) \sin n\theta.$$

So we now look for solutions of the form

$$u(\rho, \theta) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (A_n \rho^n + B_n \rho^{-n}) \sin n\theta$$

and we wish to choose  $A_n$  and  $B_n$  so that Eq. (9.3) is satisfied. If we write

$$f(\theta) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \tilde{f}(n) \sin n\theta \text{ and } g(\theta) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \tilde{g}(n) \sin n\theta$$

with

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{f}(n) &= \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\pi f(\theta) \sin n\theta d\theta \text{ and} \\ \tilde{g}(n) &= \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\pi g(\theta) \sin n\theta d\theta \end{aligned}$$

then we must have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \tilde{f}(n) \sin n\theta &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (A_n + B_n) \sin n\theta \text{ and} \\ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \tilde{g}(n) \sin n\theta &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (A_n b^n + B_n b^{-n}) \sin n\theta \end{aligned}$$

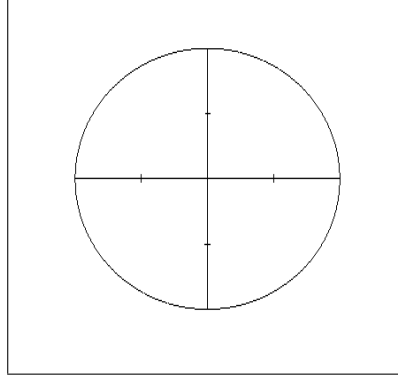
which implies that

$$\begin{aligned} A_n + B_n &= \tilde{f}(n) \\ A_n b^n + B_n b^{-n} &= \tilde{g}(n). \end{aligned}$$

Solving these equations gives

$$\begin{aligned} B_n (b^n - b^{-n}) &= b^n \tilde{f}(n) - \tilde{g}(n) \\ A_n (b^{-n} - b^n) &= b^{-n} \tilde{f}(n) - \tilde{g}(n) \end{aligned}$$

or



**Fig. 9.2.** The unit disk in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ .

$$B_n = \frac{b^n \tilde{f}(n) - \tilde{g}(n)}{b^n - b^{-n}}$$

$$A_n = \frac{b^{-n} \tilde{f}(n) - \tilde{g}(n)}{b^{-n} - b^n} = \frac{\tilde{g}(n) - b^{-n} \tilde{f}(n)}{b^n - b^{-n}}$$

and we find

$$u(\rho, \theta) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{\tilde{g}(n) - b^{-n} \tilde{f}(n)}{b^n - b^{-n}} \rho^n + \frac{\tilde{f}(n) b^n - \tilde{g}(n)}{b^n - b^{-n}} \rho^{-n} \right) \sin n\theta$$

$$= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{b^n - b^{-n}} \left( \tilde{g}(n) (\rho^n - \rho^{-n}) + \tilde{f}(n) \left( \left( \frac{b}{\rho} \right)^n - \left( \frac{\rho}{b} \right)^n \right) \right) \sin n\theta.$$

*Example 9.3 (Laplace's equation on the disk).* We wish to solve Laplace's equation,

$$\Delta u = 0 \text{ on } \Omega \text{ with } u = f \text{ on } \partial\Omega$$

where  $\Omega = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : x^2 + y^2 < 1\}$  is the unit disk as in the Figure below. The usual separation of variables arguments shows that

$$u_n(\rho, \theta) = (A \cos n\theta + B \sin n\theta) (a\rho^{-n} + b\rho^n) \text{ for } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

and for  $n = 0$  we have  $0 = \frac{1}{\rho} \partial_\rho (\rho \partial_\rho R)$ , which implies  $\rho \partial_\rho R = a$  and  $R = a \ln \rho + b$  so that

$$u_0(\rho, \theta) = 1 \cdot (a \ln \rho + b)$$

all solve  $\Delta u = 0$ . However, we want our solution to be continuous and hence bounded near  $(0, 0)$  which requires us to take  $a = 0$ . Thus we look for a solution of the form

$$u(\rho, \theta) = \frac{A_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (A_n \cos n\theta + B_n \sin n\theta) \rho^n.$$

To satisfy the boundary condition we must require,

$$f(\theta) = \frac{A_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (A_n \cos n\theta + B_n \sin n\theta),$$

i.e.

$$A_n = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(\theta) \cos n\theta d\theta \text{ and } B_n = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(\theta) \sin n\theta d\theta.$$

You are asked to show in Problem 48.7 that the solution may be written as

$$u(\rho, \theta) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \frac{1 - \rho^2}{1 - 2\rho \cos(\theta - \psi) + \rho^2} f(\psi) d\psi \text{ for } \rho < 1.$$

This is called the **Poisson integral formula**.

### 9.3 Sturm Liouville problem in cylindrical coordinates

In this section we will consider problems with symmetry about the  $z$  - axis. We will, for simplicity, restrict ourselves the region,

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : x^2 + y^2 \leq c^2\} \subset \mathbb{R}^2$$

and consider problems with associated to Dirichlet boundary conditions. That is we wish to solve the heat and wave equations,

$$\begin{aligned} u_t &= \Delta u \text{ with } u = 0 \text{ on } \partial\Omega \text{ and} \\ u_{tt} &= \Delta u \text{ with } u = 0 \text{ on } \partial\Omega. \end{aligned}$$

Following the strategy used throughout this course we first will look for solutions to the eigenfunction problem,

$$\Delta\varphi = -\lambda\varphi \text{ on } \Omega \text{ with } \varphi = 0 \text{ on } \partial\Omega. \quad (9.5)$$

As above we will let

$$(f, g) := \int_{\Omega} f(x, y) g(x, y) dx dy. \quad (9.6)$$

Let us recall that if  $\varphi$  is a solution to Eq. (9.5), then

$$-\lambda(\varphi, \varphi) = (-\lambda\varphi, \varphi) = (\Delta\varphi, \varphi) = - \int_{\Omega} |\nabla\varphi|^2 dx dy$$

and hence it follows that  $\lambda \geq 0$ . Moreover, if  $\lambda = 0$ , then  $\int_{\Omega} |\nabla\varphi|^2 dx dy = 0$  which implies  $\nabla\varphi = 0$ . This condition along with the Dirichlet boundary conditions implies that  $\varphi \equiv 0$ .

**Conclusion:** When looking for solutions to Eq. (9.5) we may restrict our attention to the case where  $\lambda > 0$ .

Because of the symmetry of the domain, we will view  $\varphi$  as a function of polar coordinate,  $(\rho, \theta)$  in which case Eq. (9.5) may be written as

$$\frac{1}{\rho} \partial_{\rho} (\rho \partial_{\rho} \varphi) + \frac{1}{\rho^2} \partial_{\theta}^2 \varphi = -\lambda \varphi \text{ with } \varphi(c, \theta) = 0, \quad (9.7)$$

see Eq. (1.14). Moreover in polar coordinates, Eq. (9.6) becomes

$$(f, g) := \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^c f(\rho, \theta) g(\rho, \theta) \rho d\rho d\theta. \quad (9.8)$$

The structure of Eq. (9.7), suggests we look for solutions of the form,  $\varphi(\rho, \theta) = R(\rho) \Theta(\theta)$ . Plugging this into Eq. (9.7) implies

$$\frac{1}{\rho} \partial_{\rho} (\rho \partial_{\rho} R) \Theta + \frac{R}{\rho^2} \partial_{\theta}^2 \Theta = -\lambda R \Theta$$

and then multiplying by  $\frac{\rho^2}{R\Theta}$  gives

$$\frac{\rho}{R} \partial_{\rho} (\rho \partial_{\rho} R) + \lambda \rho^2 = -\frac{\partial_{\theta}^2 \Theta}{\Theta} = k$$

for some constant  $k$ . We begin by recalling the solutions to

$$\partial_{\theta}^2 \Theta = -k \Theta \text{ with } \Theta(0) = \Theta(2\pi) \text{ and } \Theta'(0) = \Theta'(2\pi)$$

are of the form

$$\Theta_n(\theta) = A_n \cos n\theta + B_n \sin n\theta$$

for some  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$  and constants  $A$  and  $B$ . For such a  $\Theta_n$  we have  $k = n^2$ .

Fixing such an  $n$ , we must now solve

$$\frac{\rho}{R} \partial_{\rho} (\rho \partial_{\rho} R) + \lambda \rho^2 = n^2 \text{ with } R(c) = 0.$$

Multiplying this equation through by  $R$ , we get

$$\rho \partial_{\rho} (\rho \partial_{\rho} R) + (\lambda \rho^2 - n^2) R = 0 \text{ with } R(c) = 0$$

or equivalently that

$$\rho^2 R'' + \rho R' + (\lambda \rho^2 - n^2) R = 0 \text{ with } R(c) = 0.$$

## 9.4 Bessel Equation and Functions

Before proceeding, we will need to understand better the solutions to the ordinary differential equation,

$$\rho \partial_{\rho} (\rho \partial_{\rho} R) + (\lambda \rho^2 - n^2) R = 0 \text{ with } \lambda > 0. \quad (9.9)$$

**Lemma 9.4.** *If  $R$  solves Eq. (9.9),  $x := \sqrt{\lambda}\rho$  and*

$$y(x) := R(\rho) = R\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{\lambda}}\right),$$

*then  $y$  solves **Bessel's equation of order  $n$** ,*

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= x \frac{d}{dx} \left( x \frac{d}{dx} y \right) + (x^2 - n^2) y \\ &= x^2 y''(x) + xy'(x) + (x^2 - n^2) y(x). \end{aligned} \quad (9.10)$$

*Alternatively put, if  $y$  solves Bessel's equation of order  $n$ , then  $R(\rho) := y(\sqrt{\lambda}\rho)$  will solve Eq. (9.9).*

**Proof.** By the chain rule,

$$\rho \frac{d}{d\rho} = \rho \frac{dx}{d\rho} \frac{d}{dx} = \frac{x}{\sqrt{\lambda}} \sqrt{\lambda} \frac{d}{dx} = x \frac{d}{dx}$$

and hence in this new variable, Eq. (9.9) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= x \frac{d}{dx} \left( x \frac{d}{dx} y \right) + \left( \lambda \left( \frac{x}{\sqrt{\lambda}} \right)^2 - n^2 \right) y \\ &= x \frac{d}{dx} \left( x \frac{d}{dx} y \right) + (x^2 - n^2) y \end{aligned}$$

and hence we have eliminated the  $\lambda$  from the equation. ■

The previous results show that if  $y$  solves Bessel's equation of order  $n$  and  $y(\sqrt{\lambda}c) = 0$ , then

$$u(\rho, \theta) = (A_n \cos n\theta + B_n \sin n\theta) y(\sqrt{\lambda}\rho) \quad (9.11)$$

satisfies

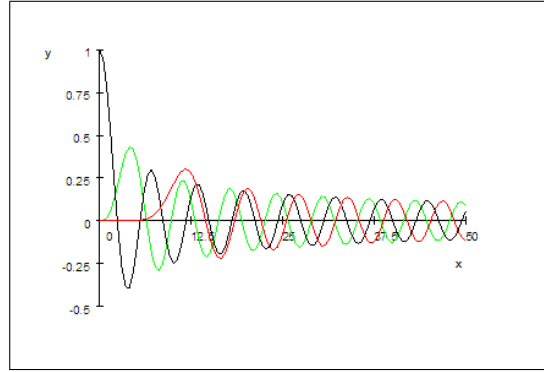
$$\Delta u = -\lambda u \text{ with } u = 0 \text{ on } \partial\Omega. \quad (9.12)$$

To understand this better we need to understand the solution to Eq. (9.10) better. We will do this in the next few results.

**Theorem 9.5.** *Every solution to Bessel's Eq. (9.10) of order  $n$  which is bounded near  $x = 0$  is a multiple of the **Bessel function of the first kind of order  $n$**  defined by*

$$J_n(x) := \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{k! \cdot (n+k)!} \left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^{n+2k}. \quad (9.13)$$





**Fig. 9.3.** A plot of  $J_0$ ,  $J_3$  and  $J_{10}$ . Notice that  $J_0(0) = 1$  whereas  $J_n(0) = 0$  for all  $n \geq 1$ .

**Proof.** This solution can be found by the usual power series method for solving such equations, namely plugging in the series expansion of the form

$$y(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^{k+r}$$

into Eq. (9.10) and then finding relations that  $r$  and the coefficients  $a_k$  have to satisfy. This method produces the solution in Eq. (9.13) above. Moreover, it can be verified by straightforward computation that  $J_n(x)$  does indeed solve Eq. (9.10).

To find more solutions one may use the method of “reduction of order” to show that the general solution to Eq. (9.13) is of the form

$$y(x) = A \int \frac{1}{J_n^2(x)} \frac{1}{x} dx + B$$

for some constants  $A$  and  $B$ . Since  $J_n(x) \sim x^n$  for  $x$  near zero we learn that

$$u(x) \sim \int \frac{1}{x^{2n+1}} dx \sim x^{-2n} \text{ for } x \text{ near } 0 \text{ if } n \geq 1,$$

$$u(x) \sim \ln|x| \text{ for } x \text{ near } 0 \text{ if } n \geq 1$$

and therefore, we find  $u(x) J_n(x) \sim x^{-n}$  for  $x$  near zero if  $n \geq 1$  or  $\ln|x| J_0(x)$  if  $n = 0$ . At any rate,  $J_n(x)$  is the only solution to Bessel’s equation which is bounded near  $x = 0$ . ■

**Theorem 9.6.** *The functions  $J_n(x)$  behave as shown in Figure 9.3. More precisely, there are constants  $c_n$  and  $\theta_n$  such that*

$$J_n(x) \approx c_n x^{-1/2} \sin(x + \theta_n) \text{ as } x \rightarrow \infty. \quad (9.14)$$

In particular each Bessel function  $J_n$  has an infinite number of zeros

$$0 < \alpha_{n,1} < \alpha_{n,2} < \dots < \alpha_{n,j} < \dots$$

and  $\lim_{j \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\alpha_{n,j}}{j} = \pi$ . (By convention, when  $n = 0$  we let  $\alpha_{0,1}$  denote the first zero of  $J_0$  which is positive.)

**Proof.** We give the idea for the proof without giving the full proof which would take us to far afield. We begin by writing a solution to Bessel's Eq. (9.13) in the form  $y(x) = x^r u(x)$  where  $r$  is to be determined so that  $u$  solves a second order differential equation where  $u'(x)$  does not appear. Since

$$\begin{aligned} y' &= rx^{r-1}u + x^r u' \text{ and} \\ y'' &= r(r-1)x^{r-2}u + 2rx^{r-1}u' + x^r u'' \end{aligned}$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= x^2 y'' + xy' + (x^2 - n^2)y \\ &= r(r-1)x^r u + 2rx^{r+1}u' + x^{r+2}u'' \\ &\quad + rx^r u + x^{r+1}u' + (x^2 - n^2)x^r u \\ &= x^{r+2}u'' + (2r+1)x^{r+1}u' + (r^2 + x^2 - n^2)x^r u. \end{aligned}$$

So we choose  $r = -\frac{1}{2}$  and then divide the above result by  $x^{r+2}$  to learn  $u$  solves,

$$u'' + \left(1 + \frac{1/4 - n^2}{x^2}\right)u = 0.$$

For  $x$  large this equation looks like  $u'' + u = 0$  (the spring “constant,”  $1 + (\frac{1}{4} - n^2)x^{-2} \rightarrow 1$  as  $x \rightarrow \infty$ ), and thus we expect  $u(x) \approx c \sin(x + \theta)$  for  $x \gg 1$ . Thus we are lead to expect that  $J_n(x) = x^{-1/2}u(x)$  should behave as described in Eq. (9.14). ■

**Corollary 9.7 (Eigenfunctions).** *The functions,*

$$u_{n,j}(\rho, \theta) := (A_n \cos n\theta + B_n \sin n\theta) J_n\left(\alpha_{n,j} \frac{\rho}{c}\right), \tag{9.15}$$

satisfy

$$\Delta u_{n,j} = -\frac{\alpha_{n,j}^2}{c^2} u_{n,j} \text{ with } u_{n,j} = 0 \text{ on } \partial\Omega. \tag{9.16}$$

**Proof.** This is a consequence of Eqs. (9.11), (9.12), Lemma 9.4, Theorem 9.5 and Theorem 9.6. ■

**Theorem 9.8 (Recurrence relations for Bessel functions).** *Let  $J_n(x)$  be Bessel function of the first kind of order  $n$  in Eq. (9.13), then:*

$$\frac{d}{dx} [x^{-n} J_n(x)] = -x^{-n} J_{n+1}(x) \text{ or equivalently} \quad (9.17)$$

$$xJ'_n(x) = nJ_n(x) - xJ_{n+1}(x), \text{ for } n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots, \quad (9.18)$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} [x^n J_n(x)] = x^n J_{n-1}(x) \text{ or equivalently} \quad (9.19)$$

$$xJ'_n(x) = -nJ_n(x) + xJ_{n-1}(x), \text{ for } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots, \quad (9.20)$$

and

$$xJ_{n+1}(x) = 2nJ_n(x) - xJ_{n-1}(x) \text{ for } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots \quad (9.21)$$

In particular from Eq. (9.18) with  $n = 0$ ,

$$J_1(x) = -J'_0(x) \quad (9.22)$$

and from Eq. (9.20) with  $n = 1$ ,  $xJ'_1(x) = -J_1(x) + xJ_0(x)$  which may be written as

$$xJ_0(x) = \frac{d}{dx} (xJ_1(x)). \quad (9.23)$$

**Proof.** Computing

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dx} [x^{-n} J_n(x)] &= 2^{-n} \frac{d}{dx} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{k! \cdot (n+k)!} \left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^{2k} \\ &= 2^{-n} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k k}{k! \cdot (n+k)!} \left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^{2k-1} \\ &= 2^{-n} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{(k-1)! \cdot (n+k)!} \left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^{2k-1} \\ &= 2^{-n} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{k! \cdot (n+k+1)!} \left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^{2k+1} \\ &= -x^{-n} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{k! \cdot (n+k+1)!} \left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^{2k+1+n} \\ &= -x^{-n} J_{n+1}(x). \end{aligned}$$

This relation also implies

$$-J_{n+1}(x) = x^n \frac{d}{dx} [x^{-n} J_n(x)] = -nx^{-1} J_n(x) + J'_n(x)$$

which is equivalent to Eq. (9.18). Eq. (9.20) is proved similarly, see Problems 69.1 from Brown and Churchill. Subtracting Eq. (9.20) from Eq. (9.18) gives Eq. (9.21). ■

**Theorem 9.9 (Bessel function normalizations).** *Let  $\alpha_{n,j}$  denote the  $j^{\text{th}}$  zero of  $J_n(x)$ . Then*

$$\int_0^1 J_n^2(\alpha_{n,j}\rho) \rho d\rho = \frac{1}{2} (J_n'(\alpha_{n,j}))^2 = \frac{1}{2} (J_{n+1}(\alpha_{n,j}))^2 \quad (9.24)$$

*More generally, if  $\varphi_{n,j}(\rho) = J_n(\tilde{\alpha}_{n,j}\rho)$  where  $\tilde{\alpha}_{n,j} = \alpha_{n,j}/c$  is the  $j^{\text{th}}$  - zero of the function  $\alpha \rightarrow J_n(c\alpha)$ , then*

$$\int_0^c \varphi_{n,j}^2(\rho) \rho d\rho = \frac{c^2}{2} (J_n'(\tilde{\alpha}_{n,j}c))^2 = \frac{c^2}{2} (J_{n+1}(\alpha_{n,j}))^2. \quad (9.25)$$

*When  $n = 0$ , this may be written as*

$$\int_0^c J_0^2(\tilde{\alpha}_{n,j}\rho) \rho d\rho = \frac{c^2}{2} (J_0'(\tilde{\alpha}_{n,j}c))^2 = \frac{c^2}{2} J_1^2(\tilde{\alpha}_{n,j}c). \quad (9.26)$$

**Proof.** To prove Eq. (9.24) we begin by recalling that  $R(\rho) := J_n(\alpha\rho)$  where  $\alpha = \alpha_{n,j}$ , solves the differential equation,

$$\frac{1}{\rho} \partial_\rho (\rho \partial_\rho R) + \left( \alpha^2 - \frac{n^2}{\rho^2} \right) R = 0$$

or equivalently that

$$\partial_\rho (\rho \partial_\rho R) + \left( \rho \alpha^2 - \frac{n^2}{\rho} \right) R = 0.$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \int_0^1 \left[ \partial_\rho (\rho \partial_\rho R) + \left( \rho \alpha^2 - \frac{n^2}{\rho} \right) R \right] \rho R' d\rho \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^1 \left[ \partial_\rho (\rho \partial_\rho R)^2 + (\rho^2 \alpha^2 - n^2) \partial_\rho R^2 \right] d\rho \\ &= \frac{1}{2} (\rho \partial_\rho R)^2 \Big|_0^1 + \frac{1}{2} \int_0^1 (\rho^2 \alpha^2 - n^2) \partial_\rho R^2 d\rho \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ (\rho \partial_\rho R)^2 + (\rho^2 \alpha^2 - n^2) R^2 \right] \Big|_0^1 - \frac{1}{2} \int_0^1 \partial_\rho (\rho^2 \alpha^2 - n^2) R^2 d\rho \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ (\rho \partial_\rho R)^2 + (\rho^2 \alpha^2 - n^2) R^2 \right] \Big|_0^1 - \alpha^2 \int_0^1 R^2 \rho d\rho \end{aligned}$$

and we have shown,

$$\int_0^1 R^2 \rho d\rho = \frac{1}{2\alpha^2} \left[ (\rho \partial_\rho R)^2 + (\rho^2 \alpha^2 - n^2) R^2 \right] \Big|_0^1.$$

Thus we have shown,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^1 J_n^2(\alpha_{n,j}\rho) \rho d\rho &= \frac{1}{2\alpha_{n,j}^2} \left[ (\rho\alpha_{n,j}J_n'(\alpha_{n,j}\rho))^2 + (\rho^2\alpha^2 - n^2) J_n^2(\alpha_{n,j}\rho) \right] \Big|_0^1 \\ &= \frac{1}{2\alpha_{n,j}^2} \left[ (\alpha_{n,j}J_n'(\alpha_{n,j}))^2 + (\alpha^2 - n^2) J_n^2(\alpha_{n,j}1) \right] = \frac{1}{2} (J_n'(\alpha_{n,j}))^2. \end{aligned}$$

To get the second equality in Eq. (9.24), set  $x = \alpha_{n,j}$  in recursion relation,

$$xJ_n'(x) = nJ_n(x) - xJ_{n+1}(x),$$

to find

$$\alpha_{n,j}J_n'(\alpha_{n,j}) = nJ_n(\alpha_{n,j}) - \alpha_{n,j}J_{n+1}(\alpha_{n,j}) = -\alpha_{n,j}J_{n+1}(\alpha_{n,j}),$$

which implies that  $[J_n'(\alpha_{n,j})]^2 = [J_{n+1}(\alpha_{n,j})]^2$ .

More generally, if  $\varphi_{n,j}(\rho) = J_n(\alpha_{n,j}\frac{\rho}{c})$ , then letting  $x = \frac{\rho}{c}$  or  $\rho = cx$  we find

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^c \varphi_{n,j}^2(\rho) \rho d\rho &= \int_0^c J_n^2\left(\alpha_{n,j}\frac{\rho}{c}\right) \rho d\rho \\ &= c^2 \int_0^1 J_n^2(\alpha_{n,j}x) x dx = \frac{c^2}{2} (J_n'(\alpha_{n,j}))^2 = \frac{c^2}{2} J_{n+1}^2(\alpha_{n,j}). \end{aligned}$$

Notice that  $\tilde{\alpha}_{n,j} = \alpha_{n,j}/c$  is the  $j^{\text{th}}$  - zero of the function  $\alpha \rightarrow J_n(c\alpha)$ . With this notation we have

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_{n,j}(\rho) &= J_n(\tilde{\alpha}_{n,j}\rho) \text{ and} \\ \int_0^c \varphi_{n,j}^2(\rho) \rho d\rho &= \frac{c^2}{2} (J_n'(\tilde{\alpha}_{n,j}c))^2 = \frac{c^2}{2} J_{n+1}^2(\alpha_{n,j}). \end{aligned}$$

■

**Corollary 9.10 (Eigenfunction Expansions).** Any “reasonable function”,  $F(\rho, \theta)$ , may be expressed as

$$\begin{aligned} F(\rho, \theta) &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} A_{0,j} J_0\left(\alpha_{0,j}\frac{\rho}{c}\right) \\ &\quad + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (A_n \cos n\theta + B_n \sin n\theta) J_n\left(\alpha_{n,j}\frac{\rho}{c}\right) \end{aligned} \quad (9.27)$$

where

$$A_{n,j} := \frac{2}{c^2 J_{n+1}^2(\alpha_{n,j})} \int_{\rho=0}^c \int_{\theta=-\pi}^{\pi} F(\rho, \theta) J_n\left(\alpha_{n,j}\frac{\rho}{c}\right) \cos n\theta \rho d\rho d\theta \quad (9.28)$$

and

$$B_{n,j} := \frac{2}{c^2 J_{n+1}^2(\alpha_{n,j})} \int_{\rho=0}^c \int_{\theta=-\pi}^{\pi} F(\rho, \theta) J_n\left(\alpha_{n,j}\frac{\rho}{c}\right) \sin n\theta \rho d\rho d\theta. \quad (9.29)$$

**Proof.** The existence of an expansion in Eq. (9.27) is to be expected from our previous experience with expansions related to symmetric eigenvalue problems. (We will have to take this one on faith.) Given such an expansion exists, the usual orthogonality arguments shows that the coefficients must be given as in Eqs. (9.28) and (9.29). ■

**Corollary 9.11 (Heat and Wave Eq. Solutions).** *The solution to the heat equation,*

$$u_t = \Delta u \text{ with } u = 0 \text{ on } \partial\Omega \text{ and} \\ u(t, \rho, \theta) = F(\rho, \theta)$$

is given by

$$u(t, \rho, \theta) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} A_{0,j} e^{-t\alpha_{0,j}^2} J_0\left(\alpha_{0,j} \frac{\rho}{c}\right) \\ + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} e^{-t\alpha_{n,j}^2} J_n\left(\alpha_{n,j} \frac{\rho}{c}\right) (A_n \cos n\theta + B_n \sin n\theta).$$

The solution to the wave equation,

$$u_{tt} = \Delta u \text{ with } u = 0 \text{ on } \partial\Omega \text{ and} \\ u(t, \rho, \theta) = F(\rho, \theta) \text{ and } u_t(t, \rho, \theta) = 0$$

is given by

$$u(t, \rho, \theta) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} A_{0,j} \cos(\alpha_{0,j}t) J_0\left(\alpha_{0,j} \frac{\rho}{c}\right) \\ + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \cos(\alpha_{n,j}t) J_n\left(\alpha_{n,j} \frac{\rho}{c}\right) (A_n \cos n\theta + B_n \sin n\theta).$$

The following result will enable us to work out some explicit examples.

**Theorem 9.12 (Reduction formula, Problem 69.3).**

$$\int_0^x s^n J_{n-1}(s) ds = x^n J_n(x) \text{ for } n \in \mathbb{N} \tag{9.30}$$

$$\int_0^x s J_0(s) ds = x J_1(x) \tag{9.31}$$

$$\int_0^x s^n J_0(s) ds = x^n J_1(x) + (n-1)x^{n-1}J_0(x) - (n-1)^2 \int_0^x s^{n-2}J_0(s) ds \tag{9.32}$$

The scaled version of Eq. (9.32) is

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^x t^n J_0(\alpha t) dt &= \frac{x^n}{\alpha} J_1(\alpha x) + \frac{n-1}{\alpha^2} x^{n-1} J_0(\alpha x) \\ &\quad - \frac{(n-1)^2}{\alpha^2} \int_0^x t^{n-2} J_0(\alpha t) dt. \end{aligned} \quad (9.33)$$

**Proof.** Equation (9.30) is an easy consequence of the fundamental theorem of calculus and Eq. (9.19). The proof of Eq. (9.32) is Problem 69.3, see Solution ???. Making the change of variables,  $s = \alpha t$ , we find

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^x t^n J_0(\alpha t) dt &= \int_0^{\alpha x} \frac{s^n}{\alpha^n} J_0(s) \frac{ds}{\alpha} = \alpha^{-(n+1)} \int_0^{\alpha x} s^n J_0(s) ds \\ &= \alpha^{-(n+1)} \left[ (\alpha x)^n J_1(\alpha x) + (n-1)(\alpha x)^{n-1} J_0(\alpha x) \right. \\ &\quad \left. - (n-1)^2 \int_0^{\alpha x} s^{n-2} J_0(s) ds \right] \\ &= \frac{x^n}{\alpha} J_1(\alpha x) + \frac{n-1}{\alpha^2} x^{n-1} J_0(\alpha x) \\ &\quad - \frac{(n-1)^2}{\alpha^{n+1}} \alpha^{n-1} \int_0^x t^{n-2} J_0(\alpha t) dt \\ &= \frac{x^n}{\alpha} J_1(\alpha x) + \frac{n-1}{\alpha^2} x^{n-1} J_0(\alpha x) - \frac{(n-1)^2}{\alpha^2} \int_0^x t^{n-2} J_0(\alpha t) dt. \end{aligned}$$

■

## 9.5 Examples

*Example 9.13.* We want to expand 1 in terms of the functions  $\varphi_j(x) = J_0(\alpha_j x)$  where  $\alpha_j$  is the  $j^{\text{th}}$  - root of  $J_0(x)$ . To this end we have

$$1 = \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{(1, \varphi_j)}{(\varphi_j, \varphi_j)} \varphi_j = \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{(1, \varphi_j)}{\frac{1}{2} J_1^2(\alpha_j)} \varphi_j(x)$$

where

$$(f, g) := \int_0^1 f(x) g(x) x dx.$$

Now, using Eq. (9.23) shows

$$\begin{aligned} (1, \varphi_j) &= \int_0^1 x \varphi_j(x) dx = \int_0^1 x J_0(\alpha_j x) dx \\ &= \frac{1}{\alpha_j^2} \int_0^{\alpha_j} s J_0(s) ds = \frac{1}{\alpha_j^2} \int_0^{\alpha_j} \frac{d}{ds} [s J_1(s)] ds = \frac{1}{\alpha_j} J_1(\alpha_j). \end{aligned}$$

Hence we find

$$\begin{aligned}
1 &= \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{(1, \varphi_j)}{(\varphi_j, \varphi_j)} \varphi_j = \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{J_1(\alpha_j)}{\frac{1}{2} J_1^2(\alpha_j)} \varphi_j(x) \\
&= 2 \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\alpha_j J_1(\alpha_j)} J_0(\alpha_j x).
\end{aligned}$$

**Solution to Exercise (76.1).** We want to expand  $x$  in terms of the functions  $\varphi_j(x) = J_0(\alpha_j x)$  where  $\alpha_j$  is the  $j^{\text{th}}$  - root of  $J_0(x)$ . To this end we have

$$x = \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{(x, \varphi_j)}{(\varphi_j, \varphi_j)} \varphi_j = \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{(x, \varphi_j)}{\frac{1}{2} J_1^2(\alpha_j)} \varphi_j(x)$$

where

$$(f, g) := \int_0^1 f(x) g(x) x dx.$$

Using the reduction formula in Eq. (9.33) we with  $x = 1$  and  $t$  replaced by  $x$ ,

$$\int_0^1 x^n J_0(\alpha_j x) dx = \frac{1}{\alpha_j} J_1(\alpha_j) + \frac{n-1}{\alpha_j^2} J_0(\alpha_j) - \frac{(n-1)^2}{\alpha_j^2} \int_0^1 x^{n-2} J_0(\alpha_j x) dx,$$

with  $n = 2$ , we find

$$\begin{aligned}
(x, \varphi_j) &= \int_0^1 x^2 \varphi_j(x) dx = \int_0^1 x^2 J_0(\alpha_j x) dx \\
&= \frac{1}{\alpha_j} J_1(\alpha_j) + \frac{1}{\alpha_j^2} J_0(\alpha_j) - \frac{1}{\alpha_j^2} \int_0^1 J_0(\alpha_j x) dx \\
&= \frac{1}{\alpha_j} J_1(\alpha_j) - \frac{1}{\alpha_j^2} \int_0^1 J_0(\alpha_j x) dx.
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore we find,

$$\begin{aligned}
x &= \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{(x, \varphi_j)}{(\varphi_j, \varphi_j)} \varphi_j = \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{\frac{1}{\alpha_j} J_1(\alpha_j) - \frac{1}{\alpha_j^2} \int_0^1 J_0(\alpha_j x) dx}{\frac{1}{2} J_1^2(\alpha_j)} \varphi_j(x) \\
&= 2 \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \left[ 1 - \frac{1}{\alpha_j J_1(\alpha_j)} \int_0^1 J_0(\alpha_j x) dx \right] \frac{J_0(\alpha_j x)}{\alpha_j J_1(\alpha_j)} \\
&= 2 \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \left[ 1 - \frac{1}{\alpha_j^2 J_1(\alpha_j)} \int_0^{\alpha_j} J_0(s) ds \right] \frac{J_0(\alpha_j x)}{\alpha_j J_1(\alpha_j)}.
\end{aligned}$$

**Solution to Exercise (76.3).** We want to expand

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } 0 < x < 1 \\ 0 & \text{if } 1 < x < 2. \end{cases}$$



We will begin by first expanding  $f(2x)$  instead, and for this we have

$$\begin{aligned} f(2x) &= \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{(f(2x), \varphi_j)}{(\varphi_j, \varphi_j)} \varphi_j = \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{(f(2x), \varphi_j)}{\frac{1}{2} J_1^2(\alpha_j)} \varphi_j(x) \\ &= 2 \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{(f(2x), \varphi_j)}{J_1^2(\alpha_j)} \varphi_j(x) \end{aligned}$$

where, using Eq. (9.31), we have,

$$\begin{aligned} (f(2x), \varphi_j) &= \int_0^1 f(2x) J_0(\alpha_j x) x dx = \int_0^{1/2} J_0(\alpha_j x) x dx \\ &= \alpha_j^{-2} \int_0^{\alpha_j/2} J_0(s) s ds = \alpha_j^{-2} \cdot \frac{\alpha_j}{2} J_1\left(\frac{\alpha_j}{2}\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2\alpha_j} J_1\left(\frac{\alpha_j}{2}\right). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} f(2x) &= 2 \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{\frac{1}{2\alpha_j} J_1\left(\frac{\alpha_j}{2}\right)}{J_1^2(\alpha_j)} J_0(\alpha_j x) \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{J_1\left(\frac{\alpha_j}{2}\right)}{\alpha_j J_1^2(\alpha_j)} J_0(\alpha_j x). \end{aligned}$$

Replacing  $x$  by  $x/2$  shows

$$f(x) = \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{J_1\left(\frac{\alpha_j}{2}\right)}{\alpha_j J_1^2(\alpha_j)} J_0(\alpha_j x/2)$$

and then letting  $\tilde{\alpha}_j = \alpha_j/2$ , shows

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{J_1(\tilde{\alpha}_j)}{\tilde{\alpha}_j J_1^2(2\tilde{\alpha}_j)} J_0(\tilde{\alpha}_j x)$$

where  $J_0(2\tilde{\alpha}_j) = 0$  for each  $j$ .

**Solution to Exercise (77.2).** In this problem we are asked to solve

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta u &= 0 \text{ on } \Omega := \{(\rho, \theta, z) : 0 \leq \rho, z \leq 1\} \text{ with} \\ u(1, \theta, z) &= 0, \quad u_z(\rho, \theta, 0) = 0 \text{ and } u(\rho, \theta, 1) = 1. \end{aligned}$$

Given the symmetry of this problem, the solution we are looking for should only depend on  $(\rho, z)$  and we should begin by looking for solutions of the form

$$u(\rho, z) = J_0(\alpha_{0,j}\rho) Z(z).$$

Since

$$\frac{1}{\rho} \partial_\rho (\rho \partial_\rho J_0(\alpha_{0,j}\rho)) = -\alpha_{0,j}^2 J_0(\alpha_{0,j}\rho)$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned} 0 = \Delta u &= \frac{1}{\rho} \partial_\rho (\rho \partial_\rho u) + \frac{1}{\rho^2} \partial_\theta^2 u + \partial_z^2 u \\ &= -\alpha_{0,j}^2 J_0(\alpha_{0,j}\rho) Z(z) + J_0(\alpha_{0,j}\rho) Z''(z) \end{aligned}$$

and we conclude that

$$Z''(z) = \alpha_{0,j}^2 Z(z).$$

The solutions to this equation are given by

$$Z(z) = A \cosh \alpha_{0,j} z + B \sinh \alpha_{0,j} z.$$

Because of the boundary condition,  $u_z(\rho, \theta, 0) = 0$ , we must require  $B = 0$  and we will look for a solution of the form

$$u(\rho, z) = \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} A_j J_0(\alpha_{0,j}\rho) \cosh \alpha_{0,j} z.$$

To fix the constants  $A_j$  we must require that

$$1 = \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} A_j J_0(\alpha_{0,j}\rho) \cosh \alpha_{0,j}.$$

Recalling from Example 9.13 that

$$1 = 2 \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\alpha_j J_1(\alpha_j)} J_0(\alpha_j \rho)$$

we must require that

$$A_j \cosh \alpha_{0,j} = 2 \frac{1}{\alpha_j J_1(\alpha_j)}$$

and hence our solution is given by

$$u(\rho, z) = 2 \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{J_0(\alpha_{0,j}\rho) \cosh \alpha_{0,j} z}{\alpha_j J_1(\alpha_j) \cosh \alpha_{0,j}}.$$

**Solution to Exercise (77.7).** Here we are to solve,

$$\begin{aligned} u_t &= \Delta u - bu = (\Delta - b)u \\ \text{on } \Omega &:= \{(t, \rho, \theta) : 0 \leq \rho \leq 1 \text{ and } t > 0\} \text{ with} \\ u(t, 1, \theta) &= 0 \text{ and } u(0, \rho, \theta) = 1. \end{aligned}$$

In this case we have

$$\begin{aligned}u(t, \rho) &= e^{t(\Delta-b)} \mathbf{1} = e^{-tb} e^{t\Delta} \mathbf{1} \\&= e^{-tb} e^{t\Delta} \left( 2 \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\alpha_j J_1(\alpha_j)} J_0(\alpha_j \rho) \right) \\&= 2e^{-tb} \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{J_0(\alpha_j \rho)}{\alpha_j J_1(\alpha_j)} e^{-t\alpha_{0,j}^2}.\end{aligned}$$

## A

---

### Some Complex Variables Facts

Here we suppose  $w(t) = c(t) + id(t)$  where  $c(t)$  and  $d(t)$  are two real valued functions of  $t$ . An important example of such a complex valued function is found in the next definition.

**Definition A.1 (Euler's Formula).** For  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  let

$$e^{it} := \cos t + i \sin t \quad (\text{A.1})$$

and for  $z = x + iy$  let

$$e^z := e^x e^{iy} = e^x (\cos y + i \sin y). \quad (\text{A.2})$$

Notice that any complex number,  $z = x + iy$ , may be written as  $z = re^{i\theta}$  where  $(r, \theta)$  are the polar coordinates of the point  $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ .

**Definition A.2.** If  $c(t)$  and  $d(t)$  are differentiable, then we define

$$\dot{w}(t) := \dot{c}(t) + i\dot{d}(t)$$

and

$$\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} w(t) dt := \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} c(t) dt + i \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} d(t) dt$$

*Example A.3.* If  $w(t) = e^t + i \sin t$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{w}(t) &= e^t - i \cos t \text{ and} \\ \int_0^{\pi/2} w(t) dt &= \int_0^{\pi/2} (e^t + i \sin t) dt = e^{\frac{1}{2}\pi} - 1 + i. \end{aligned}$$

*Example A.4.* Suppose  $w(t) = e^{it}$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt} e^{it} &= \frac{d}{dt} (\cos t + i \sin t) = -\sin t + i \cos t \\ &= i(\cos t + i \sin t) = i e^{it} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\int_a^b e^{it} dt &= \int_a^b (\cos t + i \sin t) dt = \int_a^b \cos t dt + i \int_a^b \sin t dt \\ &= (\sin t - i \cos t) \Big|_a^b = \frac{e^{it}}{i} \Big|_a^b.\end{aligned}$$

Example A.6 below, generalizes this result.

**Theorem A.5 (These definitions work just as in real variables).** *If  $z(t) = a(t) + ib(t)$  and  $w(t) = c(t) + id(t)$  and  $\lambda = u + iv \in \mathbb{C}$  then*

1.  $\frac{d}{dt}(w(t) + z(t)) = \dot{w}(t) + \dot{z}(t)$
2.  $\frac{d}{dt}[w(t)z(t)] = w\dot{z} + \dot{w}z$
3.  $\int_\alpha^\beta [w(t) + \lambda z(t)] dt = \int_\alpha^\beta w(t) dt + \lambda \int_\alpha^\beta z(t) dt$
4.  $\int_\alpha^\beta \dot{w}(t) dt = w(\beta) - w(\alpha)$  In particular if  $\dot{w} = 0$  then  $w$  is constant.
- 5.

$$\int_\alpha^\beta \dot{w}(t)z(t) dt = - \int_\alpha^\beta w(t)\dot{z}(t) dt + w(t)z(t) \Big|_\alpha^\beta.$$

6.

$$\left| \int_\alpha^\beta w(t) dt \right| \leq \int_\alpha^\beta |w(t)| dt.$$

**Proof.** 1. and 4. are easy.

2.

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dt}[wz] &= \frac{d}{dt}(ac - bd) + i \frac{d}{dt}(bc + ad) \\ &= (\dot{a}c - \dot{b}d) + i(\dot{b}c + \dot{a}d) \\ &\quad + (a\dot{c} - b\dot{d}) + i(b\dot{c} + a\dot{d}) \\ &= \dot{w}z + w\dot{z}.\end{aligned}$$

3. The only interesting thing to check is that

$$\int_\alpha^\beta \lambda z(t) dt = \lambda \int_\alpha^\beta z(t) dt.$$

Again we simply write out the real and imaginary parts:

$$\begin{aligned}\int_\alpha^\beta \lambda z(t) dt &= \int_\alpha^\beta (u + iv)(a(t) + ib(t)) dt \\ &= \int_\alpha^\beta (ua(t) - vb(t) + i[ub(t) + va(t)]) dt \\ &= \int_\alpha^\beta (ua(t) - vb(t)) dt + i \int_\alpha^\beta [ub(t) + va(t)] dt\end{aligned}$$

while

$$\begin{aligned}\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \lambda z(t) dt &= (u + iv) \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} [a(t) + ib(t)] dt \\ &= (u + iv) \left( \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} a(t) dt + i \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} b(t) dt \right) \\ &= \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} (ua(t) - vb(t)) dt + i \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} [ub(t) + va(t)] dt.\end{aligned}$$

**Shorter Alternative:** Just check it for  $\lambda = i$ , this is the only new thing over the real variable theory.

5.

$$w(t) z(t) \Big|_{\alpha}^{\beta} = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \frac{d}{dt} [w(t) z(t)] dt = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \dot{w}(t) z(t) dt + \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} w(t) \dot{z}(t) dt.$$

6. (Skip this one!) Let  $\rho \geq 0$  and  $\theta \in \mathbb{R}$  be chosen so that

$$\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} w(t) dt = \rho e^{i\theta},$$

then

$$\begin{aligned}\left| \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} w(t) dt \right| &= \rho = e^{-i\theta} \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} w(t) dt = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} e^{-i\theta} w(t) dt \\ &= \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \operatorname{Re} [e^{-i\theta} w(t)] dt \leq \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} |\operatorname{Re} [e^{-i\theta} w(t)]| dt \\ &\leq \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} |e^{-i\theta} w(t)| dt = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} |w(t)| dt.\end{aligned}$$

■

*Example A.6.* Suppose  $z = x + iy$ , then

$$e^{zt} := e^{xt} e^{iyt} := e^{xt} \cos yt + ie^{xt} \sin yt$$

and so, again by definition,

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dt} e^{zt} &= \frac{d}{dt} (e^{xt} \cos yt + ie^{xt} \sin yt) \\ &= e^{xt} (x \cos yt - y \sin yt) + ie^{xt} (x \sin yt + y \cos yt) \\ &= (x + iy) (e^{xt} \cos yt + ie^{xt} \sin yt) = ze^{zt}.\end{aligned}$$

**A better proof.** By the product rule and Example A.4,

$$\frac{d}{dt} e^{tz} = \frac{d}{dt} [e^{tx} e^{ity}] = xe^{tx} e^{ity} + e^{tx} iye^{ity} = ze^{tx} e^{ity} = ze^{tz}.$$

Using this fact and item 4. of Theorem A.5 we may conclude,

$$\int_a^b e^{zt} dt = \frac{e^{zt}}{z} \Big|_a^b.$$

If we write out what this means by comparing the real and imaginary parts of both sides we find

$$\int_a^b e^{zt} dt = \int_a^b e^{xt} \cos(yt) dt + i \int_a^b e^{xt} \sin(yt) dt$$

while

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{e^{zt}}{z} &= \frac{e^{xt} \cos yt + ie^{xt} \sin yt}{x + iy} \frac{x - iy}{x - iy} \\ &= \frac{e^{xt}}{x^2 + y^2} [x \cos yt + y \sin yt + i(x \sin yt - y \cos yt)] \end{aligned}$$

from which we may conclude that

$$\begin{aligned} \int_a^b e^{xt} \cos(yt) dt &= \frac{e^{xt}}{x^2 + y^2} [x \cos yt + y \sin yt] \Big|_a^b \quad \text{and} \\ \int_a^b e^{xt} \sin(yt) dt &= \frac{e^{xt}}{x^2 + y^2} [x \sin yt - y \cos yt] \Big|_a^b. \end{aligned}$$

**Theorem A.7 (Addition formula for  $e^z$ ).** *The function  $e^z$  defined by Eq. (A.2) satisfies*

**Proposition A.8.** 1.  $e^{-z} = \frac{1}{e^z}$  and  
2.  $e^{w+z} = e^w e^z$ .

**Proof.** By the previous example we know

$$\frac{d}{dt} e^{tz} = z e^{tz} \quad \text{with } e^{0z} = e^{0+i0} = 1.$$

Similarly, using the chain rule or by direct computation, one shows

$$\frac{d}{dt} e^{-tz} = -z e^{-tz} \quad \text{with } e^{0z} = e^{0+i0} = 1.$$

1. By the product rule,

$$\frac{d}{dt} [e^{-tz} e^{tz}] = -z e^{-tz} e^{tz} + e^{-tz} z e^{tz} = 0$$

and therefore  $e^{-tz} e^{tz}$  is independent of  $t$  and hence  $e^{-tz} e^{tz} = e^{-0z} e^{0z} = 1$ . Taking  $t = 1$  proves 1.

2. Again by the product rule shows

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt} \left[ e^{-t(w+z)} e^{tw} e^{tz} \right] &= \left[ \begin{array}{c} -(w+z) e^{-t(w+z)} e^{tw} e^{tz} \\ + e^{-t(w+z)} w e^{tw} e^{tz} + e^{-t(w+z)} e^{tw} z e^{tz} \end{array} \right] \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

and so  $e^{-t(w+z)} e^{tw} e^{tz} = e^{-t(w+z)} e^{tw} e^{tz} |_{t=0} = 1$ . Taking  $t = 1$  then shows  $e^{-(w+z)} e^w e^z = 1$  and then using Item 1. we get item 2. ■

**Corollary A.9 (Addition formulas cos and sin).** For  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} \cos(\alpha + \beta) &= \cos \alpha \cos \beta - \sin \alpha \sin \beta \\ \sin(\alpha + \beta) &= \cos \alpha \sin \beta + \cos \beta \sin \alpha. \end{aligned}$$

**Proof.** These follow by comparing the real and imaginary parts of the identity

$$e^{i\alpha} e^{i\beta} = e^{i(\alpha+\beta)} = \cos(\alpha + \beta) + i \sin(\alpha + \beta)$$

while

$$\begin{aligned} e^{i\alpha} e^{i\beta} &= (\cos \alpha + i \sin \alpha) \cdot (\cos \beta + i \sin \beta) \\ &= \cos \alpha \cos \beta - \sin \alpha \sin \beta + i (\cos \alpha \sin \beta + \cos \beta \sin \alpha). \end{aligned}$$

■



## B

---

### Assigned Homework Problems:

1. Exercises from Lecture notes: 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 2.1  
  
Exercises from the Book: 6.1, 6.2, 7.1, 10.1, 10.4, 10.5
2. Exercises from Lecture notes: 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4  
  
Exercises from the Book: 6.4, 6.5, 8.1, 10.6, 10.7  
6.4-6.5, 8.1, 8.4, 10.6, 10.7
3. Exercises from Lecture notes: 3.5,  
  
Exercises from the Book: 13.2, 13.4, 13.6, 13.7, 13.9
4. Exercises from the Book: 15.1, 15.2, 15.4a, 17.3, 17.4, 17.6, 22.2
5. Exercises from the Book: 22.3, 22.4, 24.3, 24.4, 24.5, 24.6, 28.1, 28.2
6. Exercises from the Book: 28.4, 28.5 32.1, 32.2, 32.3, 32.5, 32.6a, (32.14 optional), 33.2, 33.5
7. Exercises from the Book: 33.15, 40.1, 40.2, 40.3, 43.1, 43.4, 53.1
8. Exercises from Lecture notes: 8.2.  
From book: 40.6, 40.7, 41.1, 41.2, 41.8, 43.2, 43.5, 45.7a (Read b only)
9. Exercises from the Book: 45.2, 45.5, 48.1, 53.7, 69.1, 69.3, 76.4